owner.ford.com

ford.ca

June 2016
First Printing
Owner's Manual
Transit
Litho in U.S.A.



FSC
MIX
Paper
FSC® C102270

HK3J 19A321 AA

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2016

All rights reserved.

Part Number: HK3J 19A321 AA 04/2016 20160425101536

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual....7
Symbols Glossary....7
Data Recording....9
California Proposition 65....10
Perchlorate....10
Ford Credit....10
Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
Special Notices....11
Mobile Communications Equipment....12
Export Unique Options....13

Environment
Protecting the Environment....14

Child Safety
General Information....15
Installing Child Restraints....16
Booster Seats....25
Child Restraint Positioning....27
Child Safety Locks....28

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation....30
Fastening the Seatbelts....31
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....33
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....33
Seatbelt Reminder....34
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....35
Seatbelt Extension....36

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation....37
Driver and Passenger Airbags....38
Side Airbags....44
Safety Canopy™....44
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....46
Airbag Disposal....47

Keys and Remote Controls
Principle of Operation....48
General Information on Radio Frequencies....48
Remote Control....48
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....50

MyKey™
Principle of Operation....51
Creating a MyKey....52
Clearing All MyKeys....53
Checking MyKey System Status....54
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....55
MyKey Troubleshooting....55

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking....57

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System....62
Anti-Theft Alarm....63

Power Running Boards
Using Power Running Boards....64

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....67
Audio Control....67
Voice Control....68
Cruise Control....68
Information Display Control....69

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....70

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Table of Contents

Autowipers....70
Windshield Washers....71

Lighting

General Information....72
Lighting Control....72
Autolamps....73
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....74
Daytime Running Lamps....74
Direction Indicators....74
Interior Lamps....75

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows....76
Exterior Mirrors....77
Interior Mirror....77
Rear Quarter Windows....78

Instrument Cluster

Gauges....79
Warning Lamps and Indicators....81
Audible Warnings and Indicators....84

Information Displays

General Information....85
Trip Computer....88
Personalized Settings....88
Information Messages....89

Climate Control

Manual Climate Control....95
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....96
Rear Passenger Climate Controls....97
Heated Windows and Mirrors....98

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position....99
Head Restraints....99
Manual Seats....100
Power Seats....102
Rear Seats....104
Heated Seats....106

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points....108
Cigar Lighter....109

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders....111
Overhead Console....111
Bottle Holder....111

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information....112
Ignition Switch....112
Starting a Gasoline Engine....113
Starting a Diesel Engine....113
Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Switching Off the Engine....115
Engine Block Heater....116

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions....117
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....118
Fuel Quality - E85....118
Fuel Quality - Diesel....120
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....122
Running Out of Fuel....122
Catalytic Converter....123
Selective Catalytic Reduction System....123
Refueling....127
Fuel Consumption....129
Emission Control System....130

Transmission

Automatic Transmission....141

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Table of Contents

Brakes

General Information....146
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....146
Parking Brake....147
Hill Start Assist - Vehicles With: Hill Start Assist....147

Traction Control

Principle of Operation....149
Using Traction Control....149

Stability Control

Principle of Operation....150
Using Stability Control....151

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation....152
Parking Aid....152
Rear View Camera....154

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation....157
Using Cruise Control....157

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter....159
Driver Alert....159
Lane Keeping System....160
Steering....162

Load Carrying

Load Retaining Fixtures....164
Load Limit....164

Towing

Towing a Trailer....169
Trailer Sway Control....170
Recommended Towing Weights....170
Essential Towing Checks....172
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....178

Driving Hints

Breaking-In....180
Reduced Engine Performance....180
Economical Driving....180
Cold Weather Precautions....181
Driving Through Water....181
Floor Mats....181

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance....183
Hazard Warning Flashers....184
Fuel Shutoff....184
Jump Starting the Vehicle....184
Post-Crash Alert System....187
Transporting the Vehicle....187

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need....189
In California (U.S. Only)....190
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only)....191
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....192
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....192
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....193
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....194
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....194

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations....196
Fuse Specification Chart....197
Changing a Fuse....209

Maintenance

General Information....211

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Opening and Closing the Hood.....211
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....213
Under Hood Overview - 3.7L.....214
Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....215
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....216
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.7L.....216
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....216
Engine Oil Check.....216
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter.....217
Oil Change Indicator Reset.....218
Engine Cooling Fan - E85/Gasoline.....218
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....218
Engine Coolant Check.....218
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....222
Brake Fluid Check.....223
Power Steering Fluid Check.....223
Washer Fluid Check.....223
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....224
Fuel Filter - Gasoline.....226
Changing the 12V Battery.....226
Checking the Wiper Blades.....228
Changing the Wiper Blades.....228
Adjusting the Headlamps.....229
Removing a Headlamp.....230
Changing a Bulb.....231
Bulb Specification Chart.....236
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....237

Vehicle Care

Cleaning Products.....239
Cleaning the Exterior.....240
Waxing.....240
Cleaning the Engine.....241
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....241
Cleaning the Interior.....242
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....243
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....244
Cleaning the Wheels.....244
Vehicle Storage.....244

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....247
Tire Care.....248
Using Winter Tires.....265
Using Snow Chains.....265
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....266
Changing a Road Wheel.....270
Technical Specifications.....279

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....281
Engine Specifications - 3.7L.....281
Engine Specifications - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....282
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....283
Motorcraft Parts - 3.7L.....284
Motorcraft Parts - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....285
Vehicle Identification Number.....286
Vehicle Certification Label.....287
Transmission Code Designation.....287
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....288
Capacities and Specifications - 3.7L.....291
Capacities and Specifications - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....294

Audio System

General Information.....298
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM.....299

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....302
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC....304
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Satellite Radio....306
Digital Radio....308
Satellite Radio....310
Audio Input Jack....313
USB Port....313
Media Hub....314

SYNC™

General Information....315
Using Voice Recognition....317
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....319
SYNC™ Applications and Services....331
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....336
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....345

SYNC™ 3

General Information....353
Home Screen....363
Using Voice Recognition....364
Entertainment....371
Phone....381
Navigation....386
Apps....394
Settings....397
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....409

Accessories

Accessories....422
Auxiliary Switches....423

Ford Protect

Ford Protect....425

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information....427
Normal Scheduled Maintenance....430
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance....432
Scheduled Maintenance Record....435

Appendices

End User License Agreement....445

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

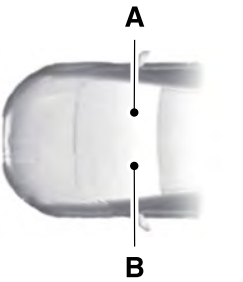
Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

Note: *Either Ford Motor Company or an authorized Ford dealer may have originally sold this incomplete vehicle to a vehicle modifier who upfitted it. As a result, it may have different options and features than described in this manual.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window


Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNINGS

Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

FORD CREDIT

US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

We offer a number of convenient ways for you to contact us and help to manage your account.

Call 1-800-727-7000.

For more information about Ford Credit and access to the Account Manager, go to www.fordcredit.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS

You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Never place front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats in front of an active passenger airbag.

On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

WARNING

Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Manual carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual, Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book and the Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines as well as pertinent supplements.

For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service:

Web Address
www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas

You can also call us at **1–877–840–4338**.

Other Vehicle Modifications

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Truck Body Builder Advisory website:

Web Address
www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS


Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.


All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNINGS


On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

Child Safety Seat



E142594

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Properly restrain children 12 and under in the rear seat whenever possible.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the correct buckle until you hear a distinct click and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child restraint will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. Your vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rearward facing child restraint.*



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

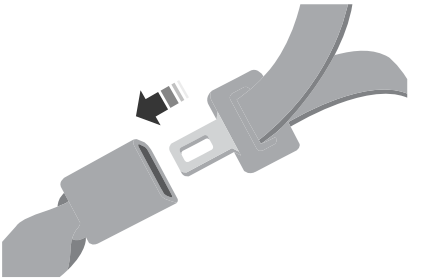
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the correct buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a distinct click and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the correct snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle helps to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child restraint is equipped).


E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement for correct installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is correctly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

WARNINGS

Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint, however the seatbelt can still be used to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, the top tether strap must also be attached to the correct top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

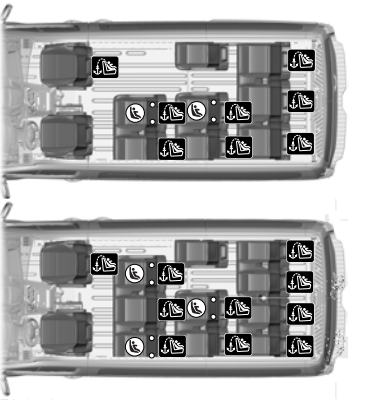
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



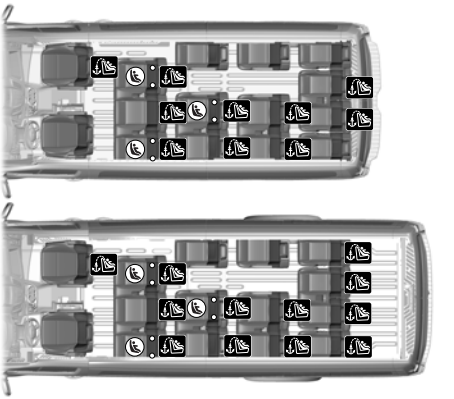
E184881



E178551



E178552



E178553

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child restraint installation at the seating positions marked with the child restraint symbol.

Note: *In addition to those shown, other seating positions may also have LATCH lower anchor points. You can identify these with the child restraint symbol shown on those seating positions.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E177639

The LATCH anchors are at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat backrest above the symbols as shown. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to correctly install a child restraint with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child restraint only to the anchors shown.

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outermost Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING

The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is correctly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm) when you do this for a correct installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored correctly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Seatbelt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a correct installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child restraint.

Using Tether Straps

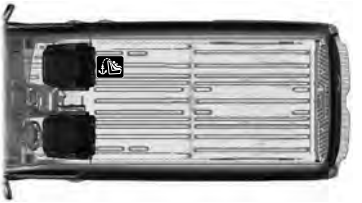
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

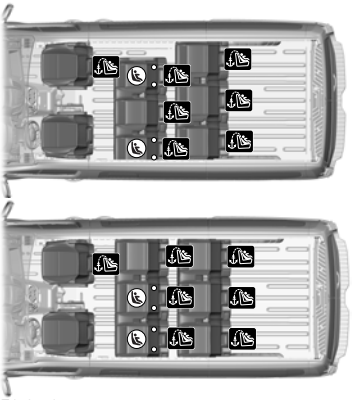
Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

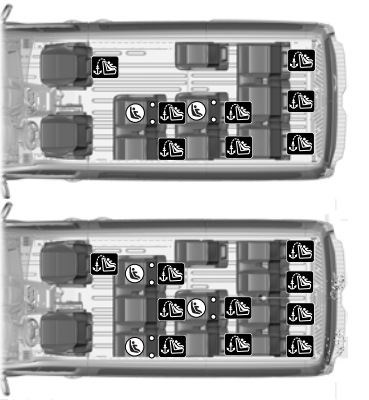
The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



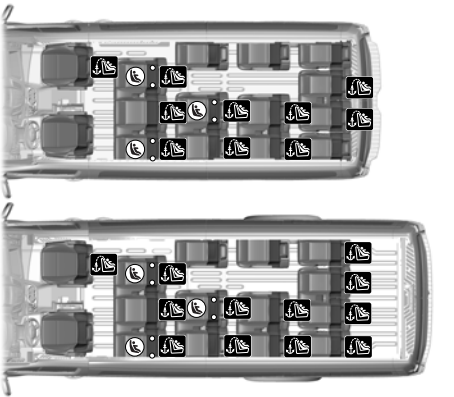
E184881



E178551



E178552



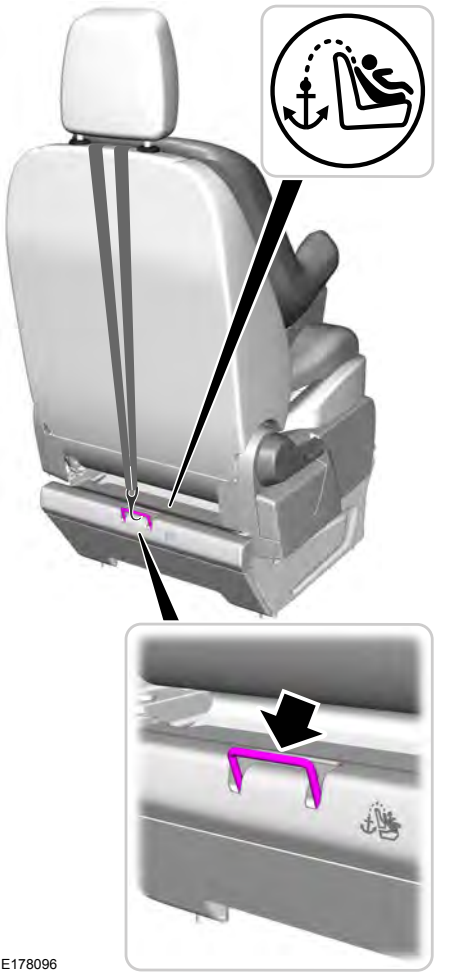
E178553

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

Front Passenger Seating Position

1. Adjust the front passenger seat fully forward.
2. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat, under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts.



E178096

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

3. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.
4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
5. Adjust the front passenger seat full rearward.
6. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Rear Seats

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat, under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts.



E177640

2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.
3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

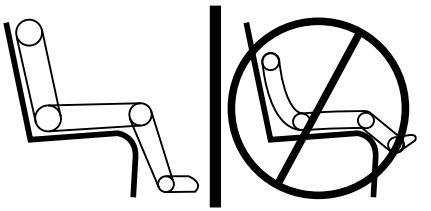
BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596



E142597

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint type	Combined weight of child and child restraint seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 99).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS (If Equipped)

WARNING

You cannot open the rear side door from inside if you have put the child safety lock on.



E176718

A child safety lock is on the rear side door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with the seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash which may result in serious injury or death.

All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the seatbelt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

WARNINGS

When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear seatbelts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, (except driver seatbelt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.



- Seatbelt warning light and chime.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. In side crashes and rollovers, the seatbelt pretensioners activate when the Safety Canopy is activated.

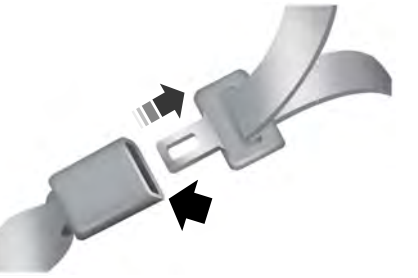
FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



E142587

1. Insert the seatbelt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



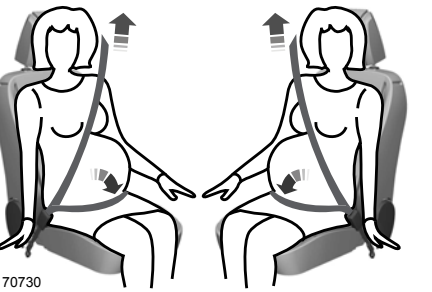
E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING

Always ride and drive with your seat back upright and the seatbelt properly fastened. The lap portion of the seatbelt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the seatbelt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.



E170730

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

After any vehicle crash, the seatbelt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all seatbelts should be checked for proper function.

Seatbelt and retractor assemblies must be replaced if the seatbelt assembly automatic locking retractor feature, or any other seatbelt function is not operating correctly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the seatbelt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a crash.

All seatbelts in your vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver seatbelt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat seatbelts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the seatbelt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seatbelt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be correctly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 15).

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seatbelt is pulled out.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Allow the seatbelt to retract. As the seatbelt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

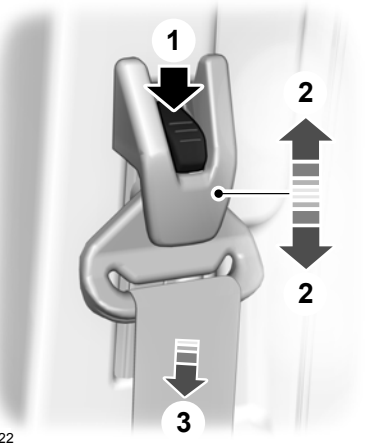
How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and return the seatbelt to the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the safety belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E165022

1. Press the button.
2. Slide the height adjuster up or down.
3. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME

This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SEATBELT REMINDER

Belt-Minder®

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light when the driver seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

If...	Then...
The driver safety belt is buckled before the ignition is switched on or less than two minutes have elapsed since the ignition was switched on.	The Belt-Minder feature will not turn on.
The driver safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and two minutes have elapsed since the ignition was switched on.	The Belt-Minder feature is turned on - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about five minutes or until the driver safety belt is buckled.
The driver safety belt becomes unbuckled for about one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than two minutes have elapsed since the ignition was switched on.	The Belt-Minder feature is turned on - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about five minutes or until the driver safety belt is buckled.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Switching the Belt-Minder on and off

WARNING


While the system allows you to switch it off, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving a crash. We recommend you leave the system switched on. To reduce the risk of injury, do not switch the system on or off while driving your vehicle.

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

The system can be switched on and off by carrying out the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission selector lever is in position park (**P**).
- The ignition is switched off.
- The driver safety belt is unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once Step 3 is started, the procedure must be completed within 30 seconds.
3. Buckle then unbuckle the driver safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will illuminate.
4. While the safety belt warning light is illuminated, buckle then unbuckle the driver safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light will flash for confirmation.
   - This will disable the feature if it is currently enabled.
   - This will enable the feature if it is currently disabled.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 239).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SEATBELT EXTENSION

WARNINGS

Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

Only use extensions provided free of charge by Ford Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.

Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the belt across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Ford Motor Company dealers. Only Ford seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelts manufacturer should be used with Ford seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Ford vehicle restraint system.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation as this may result in serious injury.

If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 46).

Passenger Airbag On and Off Switch (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Even with Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center seating position.

An airbag ON and OFF switch may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, always look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.



E170613

The front passenger airbag on and off switch has indicators that will illuminate, indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either on or off. The indicator lamp is located on the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON lamps illuminate for a short period of time when you switch the ignition on to confirm it is functional.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Switch position	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Off	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
On	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Turning the Passenger Airbag Off

WARNINGS

If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger airbag switch is off and the ignition is on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger airbag on and off switch.

An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should never be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.



E181523

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E181522

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF and hold in OFF while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned on, the pass airbag off light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Turning the Passenger Airbag Back On

WARNINGS

The seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn off your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your seatbelt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a passenger who meets the requirements stated in the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration or Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning off the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.

WARNINGS

If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 years and under in the rear seat. Always use seatbelts and child restraints correctly. Do not place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag on and off switch and the passenger airbag is turned off. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

If the pass airbag off light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is on and the ignition is on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger airbag remains off until you turn it back on.



E181521

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The pass airbag off light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The passenger side airbag should always be on (the pass airbag off light should not be illuminated) unless the passenger meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration or Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat passenger is not using the seatbelt correctly. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of your vehicle is to make sure all passengers are correctly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of seatbelts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the seatbelts, because seatbelts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Deactivation Criteria (Excluding Canada)

WARNING

This vehicle has special energy management seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a crash. The energy management seatbelt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned off, this energy management seatbelt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned on for any person who does not qualify under the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration deactivation criteria.

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- The vehicle has no rear seat;
- The vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- The vehicle has no rear seat;
- Although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or
- The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

3. Medical condition. A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- Causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger;
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

Transport Canada Deactivation Criteria (Canada Only)

WARNING

This vehicle has special energy management seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a crash. The energy management seatbelt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned off, this energy management seatbelt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned on for any person who does not qualify under the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration deactivation criteria.

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- My vehicle has no rear seat;
- The rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat;
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.

2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- My vehicle has no rear seat;
- Athough children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient;
- The child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:

- Poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat back, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SIDE AIRBAGS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.


E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are found on your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the seatback of the driver and front passenger seats.


·Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 46).

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

SAFETY CANOPY™ (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the side rail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Do not lean your head on the door. The safety canopy could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

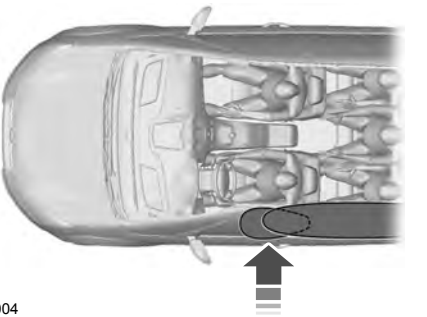
Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the safety canopy, its fuses, the pillar trims, or the headliner on a vehicle with a safety canopy as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and safety canopy are provided. Failure to wear your safety belt correctly could seriously increase the risk of personal injury or death.

To reduce risk of personal injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the safety canopy.

If a safety canopy deploys it will not function again. The safety canopy, including the pillar trims and headliner, must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the safety canopy is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of personal injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail behind the headliner and above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow safety canopy deployment



- The crash sensors and monitoring system have a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 46).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The safety canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The design and development of the safety canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of personal injury related to the deployment of a safety canopy.

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Do not modify the front end of your vehicle. Adding equipment to the front of the vehicle, including the frame, bumper, front body structure or recovery hook may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of personal injury.

The vehicle has a collection of crash sensors which provide information to the supplemental restraint system control module. The system will deploy the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags or safety canopy based on the type of crash, for example frontal impact or side impact. The supplemental restraint system control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The supplemental restraint system control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash sensors. The readiness of the supplemental restraint system is indicated by a warning lamp in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning lamp is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

If a fault is present in the supplemental restraint system it is indicated by one or more of the following:

The warning lamp will not illuminate when you switch the ignition on.

- The warning lamp will either flash or stay illuminated.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the fault, the warning lamp or both are repaired.

If the above occurs, even intermittently, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Unless repaired, the system may not operate correctly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the front airbags are designed to deploy when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the supplemental restraint system control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or front airbags did not deploy for all front seat occupants in a crash does not mean there is a fault with the system. The supplemental restraint system control module determines crash conditions, severity and safety belt usage to deploy the appropriate safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to deploy only in frontal and near-frontal crashes, for example not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts, unless the crash causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.
- The design of the safety belt pretensioners is to deploy only in frontal and near-frontal crashes, and may also deploy if a safety canopy deploys.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- The design of the side airbags is to deploy only in certain side impact crashes. Side airbags may deploy in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the safety canopy is to deploy only in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The safety canopy may deploy in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or the likelihood of a rollover event.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The remote control allows you to:

- remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors
- unlock the doors without actively using a key or remote control (intelligent access only)
- remotely open the power liftgate (if equipped)
- remotely start or stop the engine (if equipped)
- arm and disarm the anti-theft system
- activate the panic alarm.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term* ***IC*** *before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Integrated Key head Transmitter

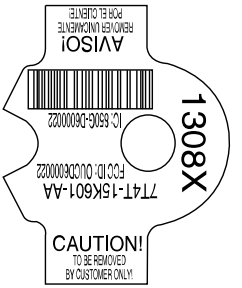
(If Equipped)



E177585

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E138615

Note: *Your vehicle's keys came with a security label that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 62).

Replacing the Battery

The remote control uses one coin type three volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

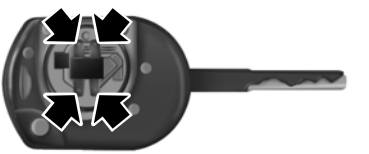
Note: *Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

Integrated Key head Transmitter



E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.



E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter.

Car Finder

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators will flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *If locking was not successful or if any door is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will sound and the direction indicators will not flash.*

Sounding a Panic Alarm

Note: *The alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to turn on the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn off.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 48).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the ignition on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the driver's safety belt is not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the engine. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off traction control (if your vehicle is equipped with this feature).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CREATING A MYKEY

You can program a MyKey using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Insert the key you want to program into the ignition and switch the ignition on.

Press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Create MyKey	When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at your vehicle's next start. Make sure you label the key so you can distinguish it from the admin keys. You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). Refer to the following **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

Use the information display to access the configurable MyKey settings, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll to a configurable feature. Press the **OK** or right arrow button to make a selection. Choose your applicable setting.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you switch the ignition off you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. • The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). • Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 113). • SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 62).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. • An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. • The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Note: *Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *Do not leave the keys in your vehicle.*

Locking

Locking With the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Locking With the Remote Control



Press the button.

Note: *You can lock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Unlocking

Unlocking With the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Unlocking With the Remote Control



Press the button.

Note: *You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off.*

Note: *Unlock your vehicle and start the engine using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.*

Unlocking the Rear Cargo Doors



Press the button.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

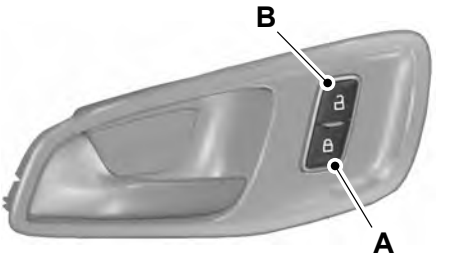
You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks. See **Remote Control** (page 48).

Locking and Unlocking Confirmation

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators flash twice.

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators flash once and a tone sounds.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside



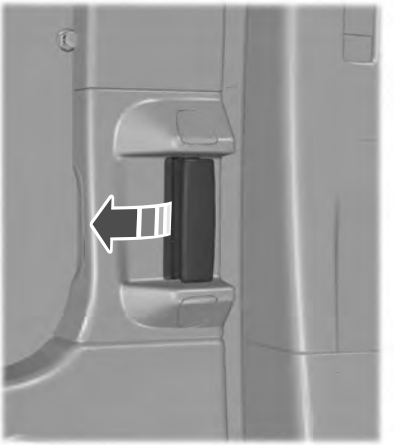
E148829

A Lock.
B Unlock.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Opening and Closing the Sliding Door

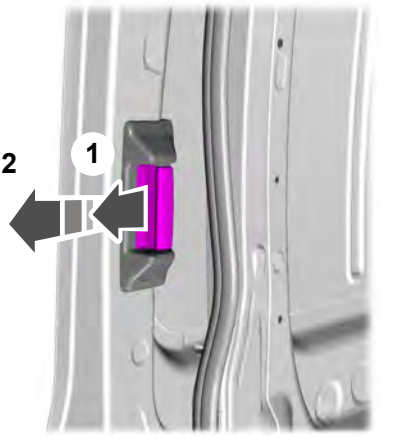
Opening the Sliding Door



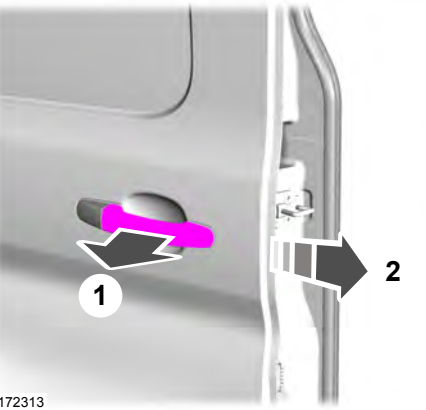
E148804

Pull the interior door handle to open the door.

Closing the Sliding Door



E171966

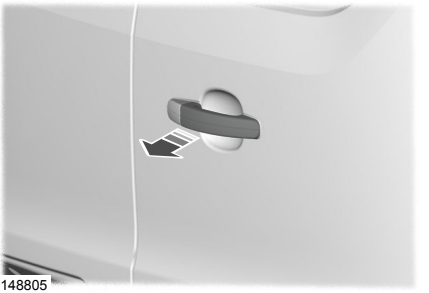


E172313

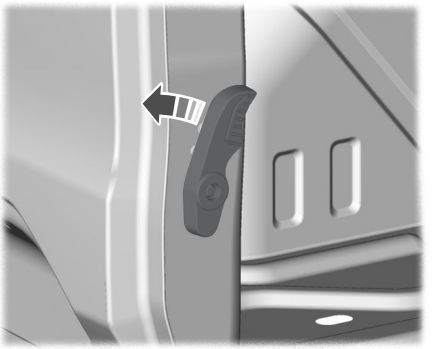
1. Pull the door handle to release the door check feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

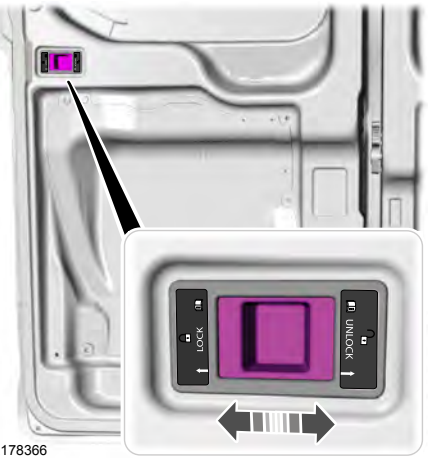
Opening and Closing the Double Rear Doors



E148805



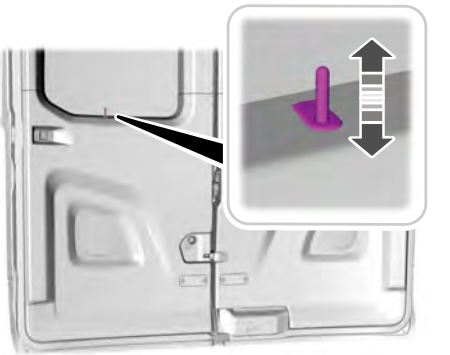
E148806



E178366

1. Slide the lever to release the catch.
2. Fully open the cargo door.

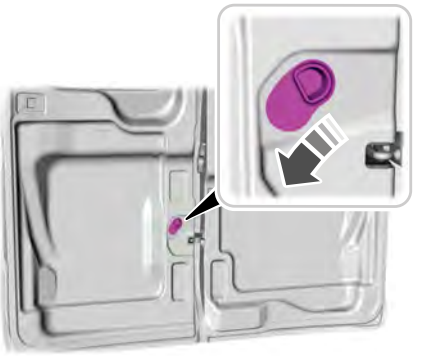
Unlocking and Opening the Double Rear Doors From Inside



E175828

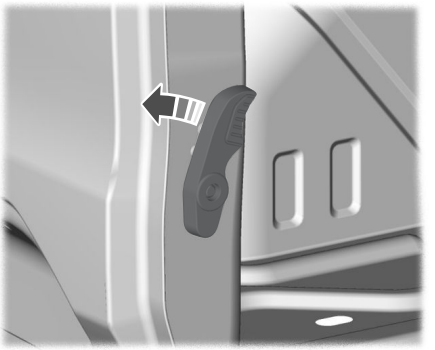
1. Lift the locking button up.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E175955

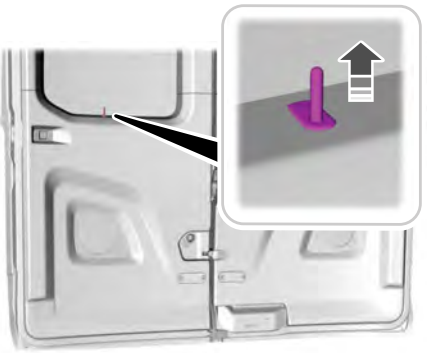
2. Push the inner release lever down to open the door.



E148806

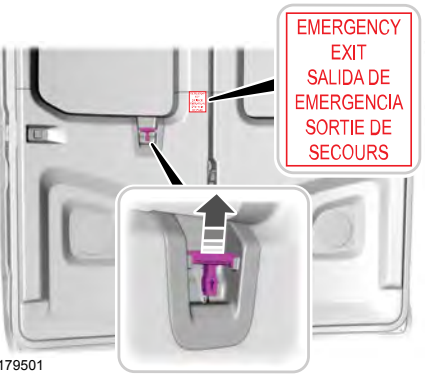
Rear Emergency Exit

Wagon and Bus



E236264

1. Lift the locking button up.



E179501

2. Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Automatic Locking

You can set your vehicle's doors to lock automatically when you exceed 5 mph (8 km/h). You can switch this on in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85). If you have switched automatic locking on, either use the interior door unlock button or switch the ignition off and use the key or remote control to unlock the rear or sliding door.

Automatic Unlocking

You can switch this function on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85). If you have switched this function on, the automatic unlocking feature unlocks all doors within 10 minutes of the end of a drive cycle, when the driver door is opened and the ignition is off.

One-Stage Unlocking

You can switch on this function using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

If you have switched on this function, you unlock all doors including the rear doors and the sliding door.

Note: *When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators flash once.*

You unlock all of the doors when you:

- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

Two-Stage Unlocking

Note: *When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators flash once.*

You unlock the front doors when you:

- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

You unlock the front doors and cargo area when you:

- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control twice within three seconds.

Zone Re-Locking (If Equipped)

If you enable zone re-locking and open one door, all other doors remain locked. See an authorized dealer for further information.

The locks on van, bus or wagon have two zones, cabin and cargo. For van, the cargo area includes the rear doors and the sliding door. For bus or wagon, the cargo area includes the rear doors.

- Exit your vehicle and press the lock button.
- Press the unlock button or the cargo area unlock button once to open the respective zone.

If you now open a door within the unlocked zone, the other doors in that zone automatically lock.

Configurable Unlocking

Configurable unlocking is set when you purchase your vehicle. It allows you to select which doors unlock when you press, once or twice, the unlock button or the cargo area unlock button on your remote control. You cannot switch this feature back on if you had it switched off. See an authorized dealer for further information.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (If Equipped)

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a correctly coded key for your vehicle is used. Using an incorrectly coded key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The engine immobilization system arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key disarms the engine immobilization system.

Replacement Keys

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts your vehicle, as well as a remote control.

If your keys are lost or stolen and you do not have a spare correctly coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the coded keys from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra correctly coded key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed correctly coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed correctly coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed correctly coded key into the ignition.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first correctly coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously correctly coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed correctly coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed correctly coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed correctly coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).

If the key was not successfully programmed, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

Alarm System

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, cargo area or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.

If the alarm is triggered, the horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 57).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or by unlocking the doors or the cargo area with the remote control.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

USING POWER RUNNING BOARDS

WARNINGS

In extreme climates, excessive ice buildup may occur, causing the running boards not to deploy. Make sure that the running boards have deployed, and have finished moving before attempting to step on them. The running boards will resume normal function once the blockage is cleared.

Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

Note: *Do not use the power running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors or the running board underbody mounts to lift your vehicle when jacking. Always use proper jacking points.*

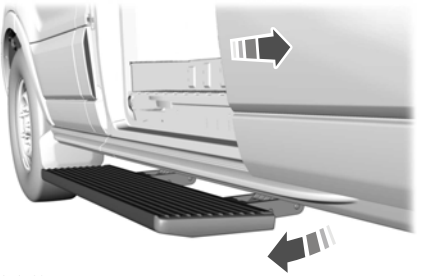
Note: *The power running boards may operate more slowly in cool temperatures.*

Note: *The running board mechanism may trap debris such as mud, dirt, snow, ice and salt. This may cause unwanted noise. If this happens, manually set the power running boards to the deployed position. Then wash the system in particular the front and rear hinge arms with a high-pressure car wash wand.*

Note: *If you drive off when the power running boards are deployed the engine may stop.*

Note: *In the event of a malfunction you can stow the power running boards manually.*

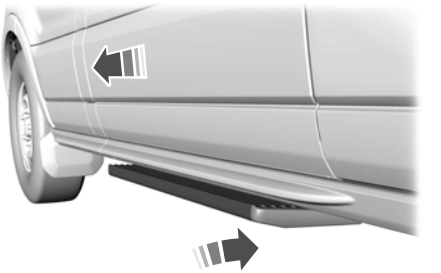
Automatic Power Deploy



E171469

The power running boards automatically extend down and out when you open the door. This can help you enter and exit your vehicle.

Automatic Power Stow



E171470

When you close the doors, the power running boards return to the stowed position after a two-second delay.

Manual Power Deploy

You can manually operate the power running boards in the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To set the power running boards to the deployed position, scroll to:

Message	Action
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Power step	Press the **OK** button.
Deploy	Press the **OK** button.

Enabling and Disabling

You can enable and disable the power running board feature in the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

To enable or disable the power running board feature, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Power step	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
Off	Press the **OK** button. When disabled the power running boards move to the stowed position regardless of the door position.
Auto	Press the **OK** button. When enabled the power running boards move to the correct position based on the door position.

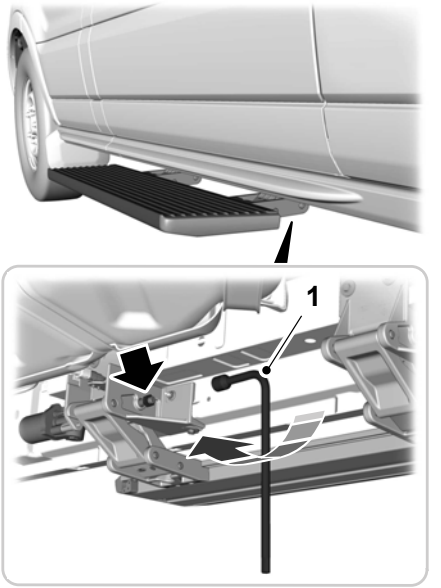
When you switch the ignition on, the system turns on automatically.

Bounce-back

The running board will reverse direction and move to the end of travel if it encounters an object while moving.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Manual Operation



E171471

1. Insert the lug wrench into the guide hole and turn the handle clockwise until the step is in the stowed position.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by opening and closing the sliding door.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 99).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

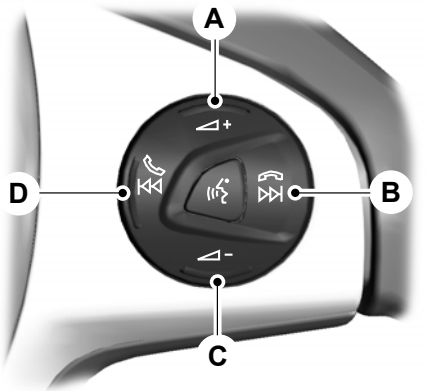
3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E159789

A	Volume up.
B	Seek up, next or end call.
C	Volume down.
D	Seek down, previous or accept call.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



E159531

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™** (page 315).

CRUISE CONTROL



E142437

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 157).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E130248

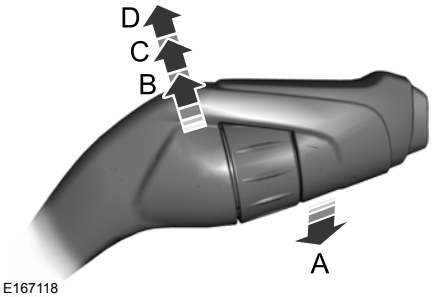
See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Do not operate the windshield wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to overheat. Always use the windshield washers before you switch the windshield wipers on.



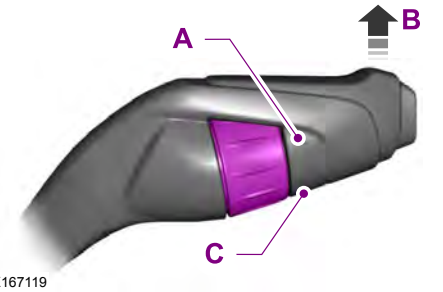
E167118

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 228).*

Intermittent Wipe



E167119

A Short wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

AUTOWIPERS

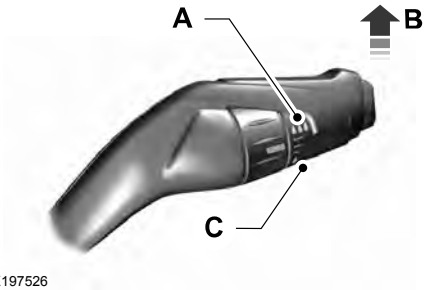
Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See* ***Checking the Wiper Blades*** *(page 228). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 228).*

Autowipers uses a rain sensor located in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjust the speed of the wipers.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E197526

A High sensitivity
B On
C Low sensitivity

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Autowipers Settings (If Equipped)

Autowipers default to on and remain on until you switch it off in the information display. With autowipers switched off, the wipers operate in intermittent mode. See **General Information** (page 85).

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*


E169316

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

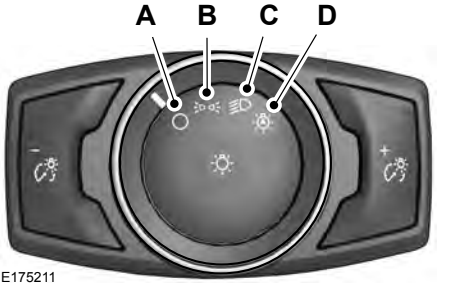
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Positions



A Off.

B Parking lamps. Instrument panel lamps. License plate lamps.

C Headlamps.

D Autolamps.

Parking Lamps

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

Note: *Prolonged use of the parking lamps when the ignition is off will cause the battery to run out of charge.*

Note: *Parking lamps may turn off automatically when the ignition is off. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Headlamp High Beam



E163718

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



E163719

Slightly pull the lever toward you.

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam headlamps on when the autolamps turn the headlamps on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E175219

Press it repeatedly or press it and hold it until the desired level is reached.

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it loses charge the instrument lighting will return to its brightest setting.*

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (If Equipped)

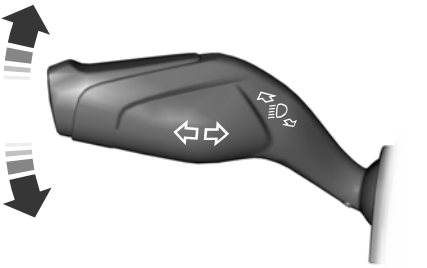
WARNING

The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. The ignition is switched to the on position.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off or autolamps positions.
4. The headlamps are off.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

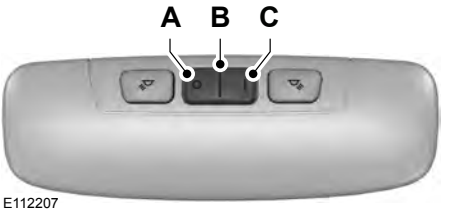
Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

INTERIOR LAMPS

Courtesy Lamp



E112207

A	Off
B	Door contact
C	On

If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamps will automatically turn on when you unlock your vehicle or open a door. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, they will automatically turn off after a short period of time to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

The courtesy lamps will automatically turn on when you switch the ignition off. They will automatically turn off after a short period of time to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamps will turn on. They will automatically turn off after a short period of time to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Reading Lamps


E112208

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps will automatically turn off after a short period of time to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Press the control to open the window. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window fully opens.

Lift the control to close the window. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open any door.

Driver Side One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Driver Side One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

To override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

If the window does not close after the third attempt the system requires service.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until it is reset.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one second.
4. Release the switch.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

5. Lift the switch again for one second.
6. Open the window and then try to close using the one-touch feature.
7. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close using the one-touch feature.

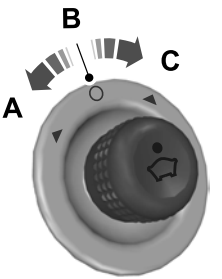
Note: *If you disconnect the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory.*

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

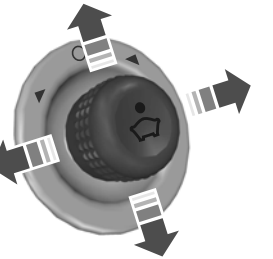
WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E71280

A Left-hand mirror.
B Off.
C Right-hand mirror.



E71281

Move the controller in the direction of the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when you unfold it.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

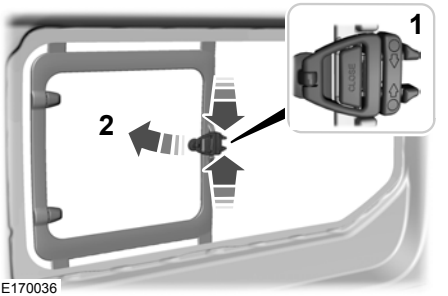
Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

REAR QUARTER WINDOWS

Opening the Rear Quarter Windows



E170036

1. Press the unlock button to release the catch.

Note: *Depending on the lock type fitted, you will have to either press the unlock buttons together or down to release the catch.*

2. Hold the catch and push the window open. Make sure the catch engages.

Note: *There is an audible click when the catch engages.*

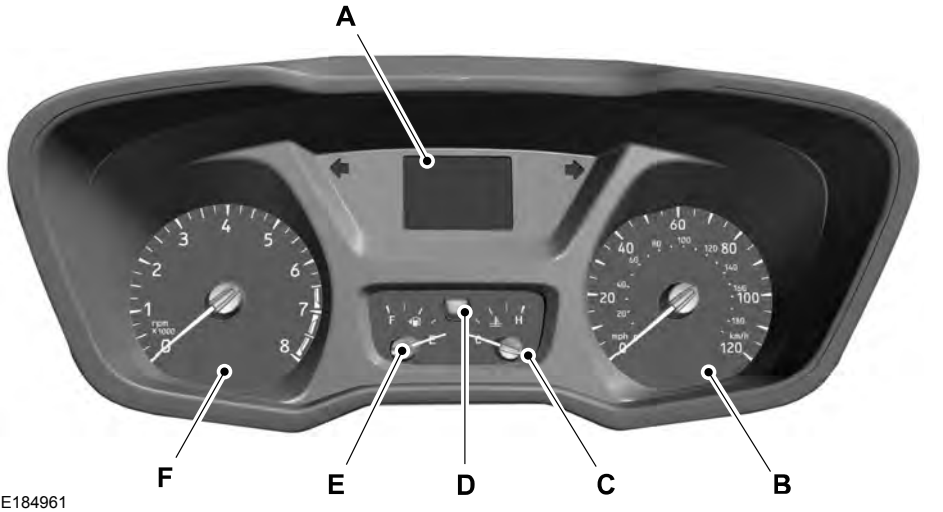
Closing the Rear Quarter Windows

1. Hold and pull the catch to close the window.
2. Press the catch to engage the lock.

Note: *There is an audible click when the lock engages.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GAUGES



E184961

A Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).
B Speedometer.
C Engine coolant temperature gauge.
D Tripmeter reset and distance to empty toggle button.
E Fuel gauge.
F Tachometer.

Information Display

Odometer

Registers the distance your vehicle has traveled.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 88).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 85).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

Tripmeter Reset and Distance to Empty (If Equipped)

Press the button to change between the tripmeter and distance to empty information. Press and hold the button to reset the tripmeter.

Fuel Gauge

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	35 miles to 80 miles (56 km to 129 km)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	35 miles (56km)

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING



Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

Diesel Warning Lamps (If Equipped)

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the diesel exhaust fluid is low.

If it illuminates, the information display message advises whether it is diesel exhaust fluid level related or due to a system malfunction. If the diesel exhaust fluid level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Water In Fuel Warning Lamp



When you start the engine the water in fuel indicator lamp turns off after a short period of time.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. This occurs when approximately 7 fl oz (200 ml) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alternatively you may be able to drain the fuel filter water trap.

See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 224).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *If it illuminates when the engine is running after draining the fuel filter water trap, this indicates a fuel filter service is required. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Direction Indicator



Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps

WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Service Required Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Ignition Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Lane Departure Warning Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

It illuminates when the system is not available and may indicate that the system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).

Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Message Center Indicator



It illuminates when a new message is stored in the information display.

The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

WARNING



If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.

Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Stability Control** (page 150). See **Traction Control** (page 149).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Transmission Tow/Haul Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

If it flashes when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction and could lead to transmission damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Airbag Secondary Warning

Sounds when there is a fault with the airbag system and the airbag warning lamp.

Door Ajar

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver door, and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Gearshift Lever not in Park (P)

Sounds when the driver door is open, the key is in the ignition and the gearshift lever is not in park (P).

Key in Ignition

Sounds when the driver door is open and the key is in the ignition.

Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning chime continues to sound when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Safety Belt Minder

WARNINGS

The safety belt minder remains in stand-by mode when the driver's safety belt has been fastened. It will sound if the driver's safety belt is unfastened.

WARNINGS

Do not sit on top of a fastened safety belt to prevent the safety belt minder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

Sounds when a safety belt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E138659

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information display control.



This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is enabled, and unchecked indicates the feature is disabled.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Main Menu

Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2
Information
Settings

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Trip computer 1 Trip computer 2		
Dist to empty		
Trip Odometer		
Trip Timer		
Average Fuel	Ford EcoMode	Gear Shifting
		Anticipation
		Speed
		Information
Outside Temp.		
Digital Speedometer		
All Values[1]		

[1] This feature is seen on high level clusters.

Note: *The trip computer readings can be reset independently. See* ***Trip Computer*** *(page 88).*

Information
Driver Alert
DEF Level
Exhaust Filter
Engine Hours
Engine Hours
Trailer Brake
MyKey
MyKey Info
System Check

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Settings		
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl	
	Auto Exh.Clean	
	Driver Alert	
	Tire Monitor	
	Power Step	Auto
		Deploy
		Off
	Trailer Brake	Electric
		Elec.-Hydraulic
	Lane Keeping	
Display	Navigation info	
	Language	Choose your applicable setting.
	Distance	Choose your applicable setting.
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting.
Convenience	Compass	Display
		Calibrate
	Locks	Autolock
		Autounlock
		Global Unlock
		Custom Lock
MyKey	Create MyKey	Create MyKey
	Traction Ctrl	Always On
		User selectable
	Max Speed	Choose your applicable setting.
		Off
	Speed Warning	Choose your applicable setting.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Settings		
		Off
	Volume Limiter	
	Clear MyKeys	Clear MyKey

System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

Digital Speedometer

Provides a digital display of the current vehicle speed.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Measure Units

You can choose personalized settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To swap between imperial and metric units, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Display	Press the **OK** button.
Measure unit	Choose your applicable setting. Press the **OK** button. Swapping between imperial and metric units will affect the following displays: • Average fuel consumption. • Distance to empty. • Odometer. • Outside temperature units. • Trip odometer. • Digital Speedometer.

INFORMATION MESSAGES



E130248

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages.

The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical system over-voltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Battery low See manual	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Level

Message	Action
DEF level low Range XXX mi Refill now	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid tank will be empty. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
DEF level empty YY MPH max in XXX mi	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid tank will be empty and when it will restrict your vehicle speed. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
DEF level empty Speed limited to YY MPH	Indicates that the diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty and that your vehicle speed is being restricted. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
DEF level empty YY MPH max Upon restart	Indicates that the diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty and that your vehicle speed will be restricted when you restart your vehicle. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
DEF level empty Engine idled soon	Indicates that the diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty and that the engine will soon be restricted to idle operation.
DEF level empty Engine idled See manual	Indicates that the diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty and that the engine is restricted to idle operation.

Note: *When filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased diesel exhaust fluid level is registered. The system must register the increased diesel exhaust fluid level before your vehicle will return to full power.*

Diesel Exhaust Fluid System Malfunction

Message	Action
DEF fault YY MPH max in XXXX mi	Indicates that your vehicle speed will soon be restricted.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Message	Action
	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
DEF fault Speed limited to YY MPH	Indicates that your vehicle speed is restricted. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
DEF fault Engine idled soon	Indicates that the engine will soon be restricted to idle operation. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
DEF fault Engine idled See manual	Indicates that the engine is restricted to idle operation. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
DEF level empty YY MPH max Upon restart	Indicates that your vehicle speed will be restricted when you restart your vehicle. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Door Open

Message	Action
Driver door ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the door.
Driver side rear door ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the door.
Passenger door ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the door.
Passenger side rear door ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the door.
Hood open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the hood.
Rear load compartment door ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and close the door.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Engine

Message	Action
Engine fault Service now	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).

Lighting

Message	Action
Brake lamp Bulb fault	Displays if a brake lamp bulb fails. See **Lighting** (page 72).
Low beam Bulb fault	Displays if a low beam bulb fails. See **Lighting** (page 72).
Headlamp fault Service required	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and your vehicle requires an oil change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).
Water detected in fuel Service required	Displays if the system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 224).
Brake fluid level low Service now	Displays if the brake fluid level is low or if there is a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 223).
Washer fluid level low	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 223).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Occupant Protection

Message	Action
Service Beltminder	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aid

Message	Action
Parking aid fault Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and your vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 112).
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 112).

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

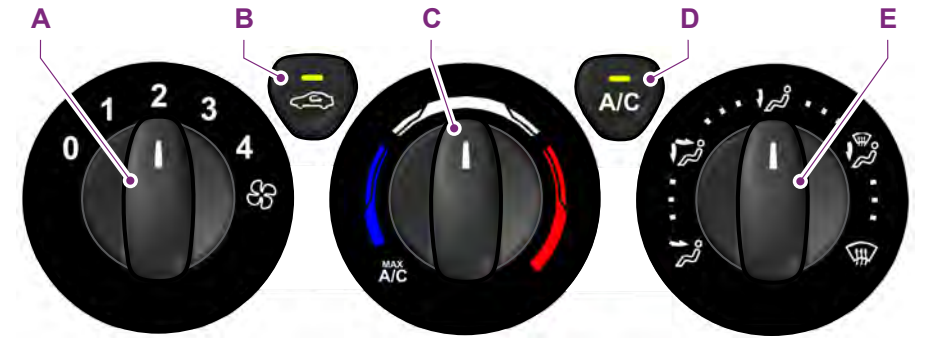
Message	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Message	Action
	See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266). If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E147011

A **Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.

B **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculation air may turn off automatically, or be prevented from turning on in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select **MAX A/C**, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning. Turn the temperature control to maximum heat to turn the auxiliary heater on

D **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows open for two to three minutes.

E **Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents and footwell air vents.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Select to distribute air through the footwell air vents.


Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents and footwell air vents.


Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog or clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. You can also increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.*

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed and press the A/C button to improve clearing, if required.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.

Cooling the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or neutral.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.
- Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.

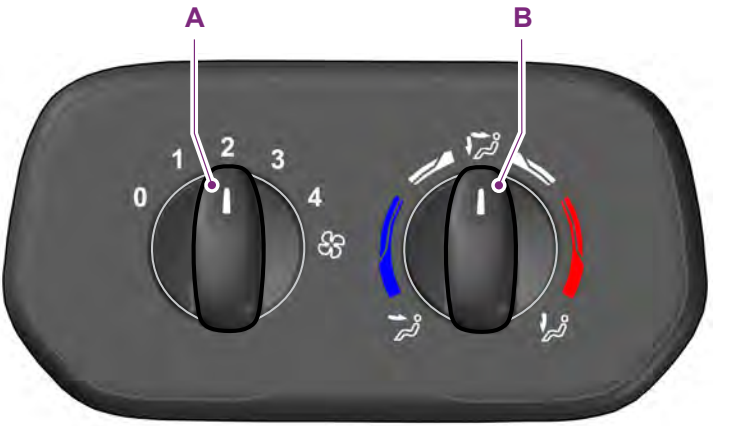
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and windshield air vents positions.
- Press the **A/C** button.
- Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.
- Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
- Close the instrument panel vents.

Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

- Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
- Press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS



E175829

A **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

B **Temperature and air distribution control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature and distribution. Cool air distributes through the top air vents and warm air distributes through the rear floor vents.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *Switch the air conditioning on to cool the air through the rear air vents.*

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window (If Equipped)

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*

Note: *The heated rear window button is located on the instrument panel, near the instrument cluster.*



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors



When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

Note: *On vehicles without a heated exterior mirror button, the mirrors turn on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

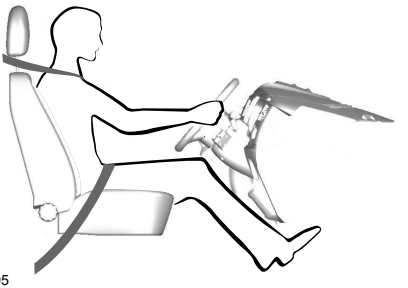
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

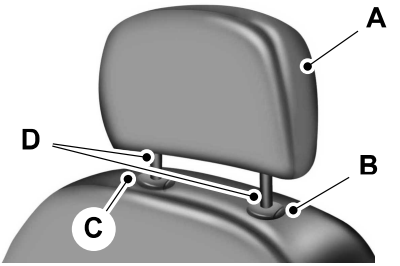
HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING

The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and correctly adjusted when the seat is occupied. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint may provide reduced protection to an occupant during certain rear impacts.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The head restraint consists of:



E215998

A Energy absorbing head restraint.
B Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
D Steel stems.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

WARNING

Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible.*

Raising the Head Restraint

Lift the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button B.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

WARNING

Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Lift the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons B and C.
3. Remove the head restraint.

Installing the Head Restraint

WARNING

Install head restraints correctly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

1. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves.
2. Press and hold buttons B and C.
3. Push the head restraint down.

MANUAL SEATS

Moving the Seat Backward or Forward

WARNINGS

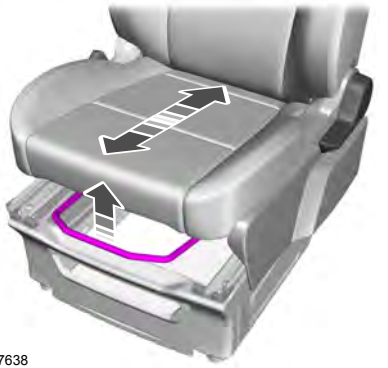
Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Make sure the driver seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



E177638

1. Lift the handle.
2. Move the seat backward or forward to attain the desired position.
3. Release the handle.

Note: *The driver seat has removable stop bolts on the track to enable access to the vehicle battery. See* ***Changing the 12V Battery*** *(page 226).*

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E146386

1. Rotate the handle clockwise or counter clockwise to attain the desired lumbar support.

Recline Adjustment

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

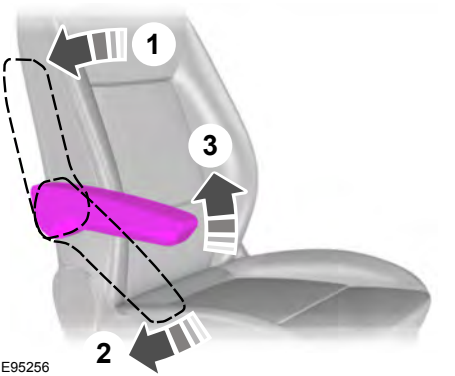
Do not adjust the recliner from inside your vehicle if the seat is unoccupied. The seat back may move suddenly and cause personal injury.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


E175474

1. Lift the handle.
2. Move the seat back backward or forward to attain the desired position.
3. Release the handle.

Adjusting the Armrest



E95256

1. Raise the armrest fully.
2. Lower the armrest to the stowed position.
3. Raise the armrest to attain the desired position.

POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

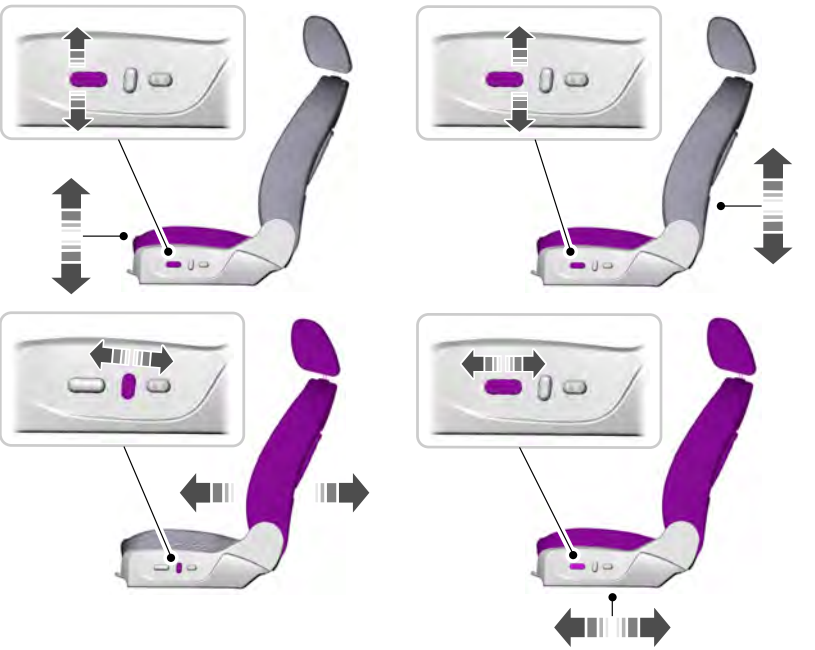
WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position.

The driver seat has removable stop bolts on the track to enable access to the vehicle battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 226).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E138647

Power Lumbar



E138648

REAR SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Note: *Rear seat arrangements vary depending on the vehicle.*

Recline Adjustment (If Equipped)

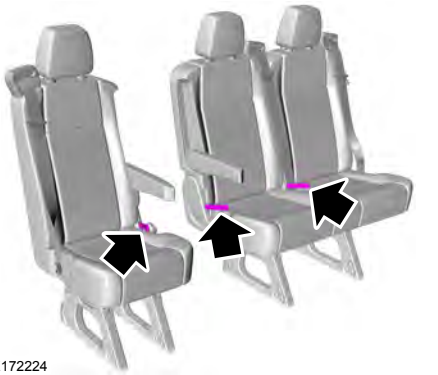
WARNINGS

When reclining the seat backrest forward and backward, take care not to get your hands caught between the seat backrest and the frame, catches or mechanism. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

WARNINGS

Make sure that any cargo or objects are not trapped behind the seat backrest. Make sure the seatbelts are not trapped in any way when unfolding the seat backrest up. Failure of an occupant to be able to use a trapped seatbelt increases the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Make sure that the seat backrest is fully engaged in its catch. A seat backrest which is not fully engaged in its catch could move in the event of an accident. This may result in serious personal injury or death.



E172224

With the seat occupied, pull the lever or strap to recline or raise the seat backrest.

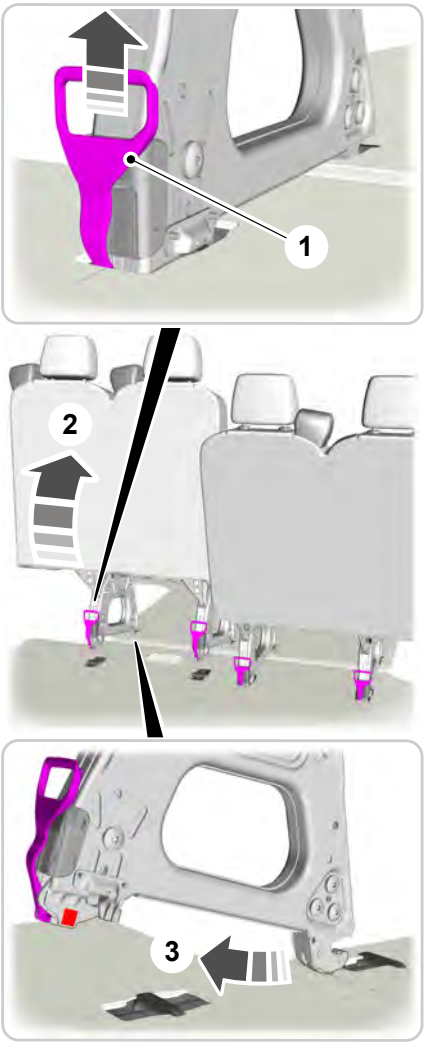
Removing Seats (Passenger Vehicles)

WARNINGS

Seats can weigh up to 176 lb (80 kg). Do not attempt to lift or carry a seat on your own.

Do not use the release handles to lift or carry the seat.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E173870

1. Pull the release handle up at an angle from the floor.
2. While holding the handle in this position, tilt the top of the seat forward to release the seat frame rear catches from the floor.
3. When the rear seat latches are clear of the floor, release the handle.
4. Pull the seat backward to release the seat frame front catches.
5. Remove the seat from the vehicle.

Note: *Two persons are required to release the seat handles and remove the seat.*

Note: *You can only remove seats that have integral release handles.*

Note: *The seatback does not fold forward.*

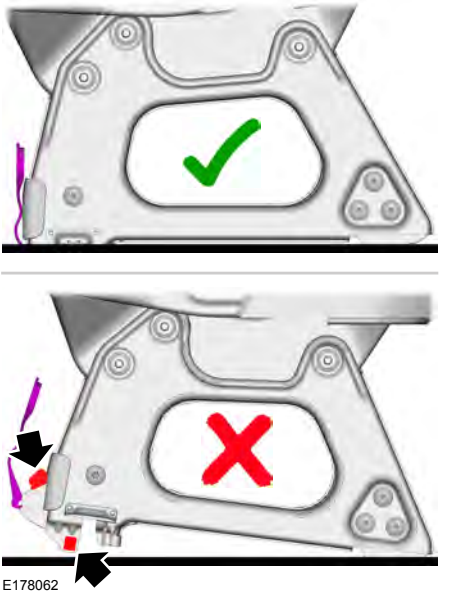
Installing the Seats

WARNINGS

Make sure that the floor catches are free from foreign material before installing the seats.

Make sure that you securely fasten the seat catches when installing. Check the latches are correctly engaged by checking the red latch indicators.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E178062

1. Align the seat frame front catches.
2. Push the seat forward to engage the seat frame front catches.
3. Align the seat frame rear catches.
4. Allow the seat to drop under its own weight for the last 6-8 in (15-20 cm).

HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: *Do not place heavy objects on the seat.*

Note: *If you spill water or any other liquid onto the seat, allow the seat to dry thoroughly before you switch the heated seat on.*



E234067

The heated seat switch is on the seat base. Press the button to switch the heated seat on or off. The system reaches maximum temperature after five or six minutes. It is regulated automatically.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The heated seat remains on until you switch it off. If the heated seat is on when you switch the ignition off, it will be on when you switch the ignition back on.

Note: *Do not switch the heated seat on unless your vehicle is running. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

(If Equipped)

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNINGS

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations


E185878

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the cargo area.

AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Use the power point for powering electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is under the parking brake lever.



E143941

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

CIGAR LIGHTER

WARNING

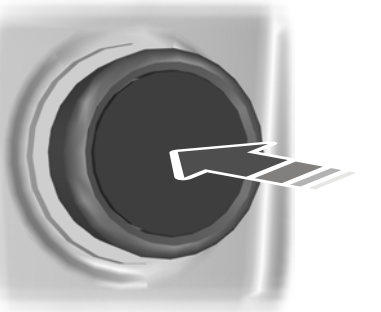
Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.*

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*



E103382

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

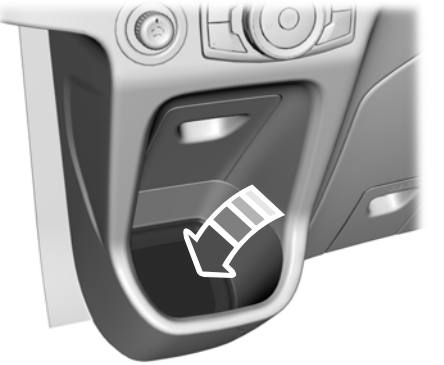
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.



E171160

OVERHEAD CONSOLE (If Equipped)

Overhead Storage Compartments

Overhead Console

WARNING

Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Heavy objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop and may increase the risk of serious injury.



E189357

BOTTLE HOLDER

WARNING

Do not place glass objects in the bottle holder.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

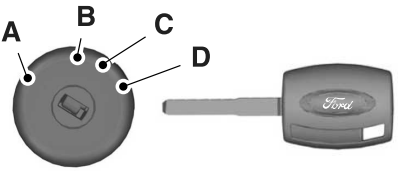
If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E180794

A (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

Note: *To switch the engine off when your vehicle is moving, move the transmission selector lever to position **N**. Use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After your vehicle has stopped, switch the engine off and move the transmission selector lever to position **P**. Turn the key to position **A** or **B**.*

B (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

C (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

D (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Turn the key to the on position to switch the ignition on.
3. Turn the key to the start position to start your vehicle. Release the key when the engine starts.

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will adjust automatically to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed will vary depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

Cold or Hot Engine

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13ºF (-25ºC), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

Flooded Engine

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Note: *If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.*

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

WARNINGS

Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Starting fluids could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, serious personal injury or death.

Do not add gasoline, gasohol, alcohol or Kerosene to diesel fuel. This action creates a serious fire hazard and will result in poor engine performance. Engine damage caused by the use of incorrect fuel is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *Avoid shutting the engine down after an extensive idling period. Drive your vehicle for several miles with the engine at normal operating temperatures under a moderate load.*

Engine Glow Plugs



The powertrain control and glow plug control modules operate the glow plug system.

The glow plug control module using the engine coolant temperature, barometric pressure sensor and the environmental temperature sensor will determine how long the glow plugs stay energized. The required time for the glow plugs to remain energized will decrease as the engine coolant temperature, barometric pressure and the environmental temperature increases.

When you switch the ignition on, the glow plug indicator lamp will illuminate if glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the glow plug indicator lamp turns off before starting the engine. The lamp should always momentarily illuminate when the engine is cold and you switch the ignition on.

Cold Weather Operation

In cold weather below 32ºF (0ºC), the engine may slowly increase to a higher idle speed if left idling in park (P). As the engine warms-up, the engine sound level decreases due to the activation of powertrain control module controlled sound reduction features.

It is recommended that the engine block heater be used for starting when the temperature is -9ºF (-23ºC) or colder. See **Engine Block Heater** (page 116).

Note: *Idling in cold weather does not heat the engine to its normal operating temperature. Long periods of idling, especially in cold weather, can cause a buildup of deposits which can cause engine damage.*

Starting a Cold or Hot Engine

Note: *Do not press the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Turn the key to the on position and wait until the glow plug indicator lamp turns off.

Note: *Do not press the accelerator pedal.*

3. Turn the key to the start position to start the engine.
4. Release the key.

Note: *You may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds when the outside air temperature is 5ºF (-15ºC) or below.*

Note: *Engine power may be reduced for 15 seconds when the engine oil temperature is -9ºF (-23ºC) or below. This is to allow the turbocharger to be lubricated.*

Note: *If the engine fails to start after a number of attempts, the system will not allow you to operate the starter for a short period of time, for example 30 minutes.*

Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank with the key turned to the start position while the brake pedal is fully depressed, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition off.

Note: *Make sure the parking brake is fully applied.*

2. Release the brake pedal.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Turn the key to the on position and wait until the glow plug indicator lamp turns off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *Do not press the accelerator pedal.*

5. Turn the key to the start position to start the engine.
6. Release the key.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

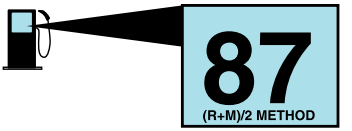
Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 169).

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

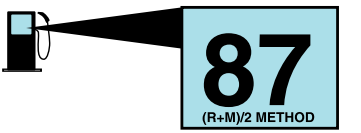
Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

FUEL QUALITY - E85

Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles

Flex fuel vehicles have one of the following identifiers:

- Yellow fuel filler cap.
- Yellow bezel around the fuel filler inlet.
- Yellow fuel filler housing.
- Yellow E85 label on the fuel tank filler door.



E161513

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 169).

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuels containing more than 85% ethanol or E100 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

Switching Between E85 and Gasoline

We do not recommend repeatedly alternating between E85 and gasoline. If you switch from using E85 to gasoline, or from gasoline to E85, add as much fuel as possible, at least half a tank. Drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 5 mi (8 km) to allow it to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration. If you use E85 exclusively, we recommend that you fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline at each scheduled oil change.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

Fuel Requirements - Choosing the Right Fuel: Vehicles Operated Where Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is Required (United States/Canada/Puerto Rico/U.S. Virgin Islands and Other Locales)

WARNINGS

Only use Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel fuel (ULSD) containing a maximum of 15 ppm sulfur and up to 20% biodiesel (B20). These fuels should meet the diesel specifications defined by American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) D975 for diesel and by ASTM D7467 for B6-B20 blends, or an equivalent local market specification.

Do not mix diesel with oil, kerosene, paraffin, gasoline or other liquids to diesel. This can cause damage to the fuel system.

Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel, raw fats, oils, waste cooking greases, biodiesel fuels greater than 20% or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use.

The vehicle warranty will not cover damage caused by using an improper type of fuel or fuel additive.

Note: *Do not blend used engine oil with diesel fuel under any circumstances. Blending used oil with the fuel will significantly increase your vehicle's exhaust emissions and reduce engine life due to increased internal wear.*

Fuel Requirements - Choosing The Right Fuel: Vehicles Operated Where Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel Is Not Required

Use only a diesel engine configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a diesel engine designed to use only ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel may result in damage to engine emission control devices and the after-treatment system, potentially rendering your vehicle inoperable.

For the engine to operate reliably on low sulfur or high sulfur diesel fuel, the engine must be a factory built high sulfur engine (available as a dealer order option for select markets) or an ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel configured engine that has been retrofitted for high sulfur diesel fuel using Ford Motor Company dealer service parts. Failure to use retrofit components other than those available through your authorized dealer will result in coolant system damage, engine overheating, selective catalyst reduction system or diesel particulate filter damage and possible base engine damage.

Vehicles with engines configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel are only available for sale in countries where ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel is generally not available or mandated by the government. Vehicles originally sold in a ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel market that are subsequently exported to non ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel markets will need to be retrofitted (at the customer's expense using Ford authorized dealer service parts) in order to be reliably operated on non ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Biodiesel

You may operate your vehicle on diesel fuels containing up to 20% biodiesel, also known as B20.

Biodiesel fuel is a chemically converted product from renewable fuel sources, such as vegetable oils, animal fats and waste cooking greases.

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability when using biodiesel in your vehicle:

- Confirm the biodiesel content of the fuel to be B20 (20% biodiesel) or less by checking the label on the fuel pump.
- Only use biodiesel fuel of good quality that complies with applicable industry standards ASTM D975 for diesel and ASTM D7467 for B6-B20 blends.
- Follow the recommended service maintenance intervals. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 430).
- Do not store biodiesel fuel in the fuel tank for more than one month.
- Do not use raw oils, fats or waste cooking greases.

System Messages

Message	Action and Description
Fuel Pressure Low	Consider changing brands or reducing biodiesel content if you have cold temperature fuel gelling issues or this message frequently appears.

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 20% may cause damage to your vehicle, including engine or exhaust after-treatment hardware (exhaust catalyst and particulate filter) failures. Using biodiesel in concentrations greater than 20% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power or damage to fuel system components, including fuel pump and fuel injector failures. See **Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance** (page 432).

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel fuel blends with greater than 5% must be labeled.

Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter B followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B20 indicates a fuel containing 20% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel fuels degrade more easily than diesel fuels not containing biodiesel and should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than one month. If you plan to park or store your vehicle for more than one month, then you should empty your vehicle fuel tank of biodiesel fuel. You should fill the tank with a pure petroleum-based diesel fuel and run your vehicle for a minimum of 30 minutes.

If you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Degraded or oxidized biodiesel can damage fuel system seals and plastics and corrode steel parts.*

Fuel companies adjust diesel fuel formulations for cold temperatures. Diesel fuel which has not been correctly formulated for cold ambient temperatures may gel and block the fuel filters. An indication that the fuel filters are blocked is the engine starts, stalls after a short time and then does not restart. If you have been using biodiesel, you may need to use a fuel with lower biodiesel content or discontinue using biodiesel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Do not use alcohol based fuel additives to correct fuel gelling. This may damage the fuel injectors or fuel system. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to fuel system damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty. Only use an anti-gel and performance improvement product. We recommend Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver.

Diesel Fuel Additives

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket additives to your fuel if you use a high quality diesel fuel that conforms to ASTM industry specifications. Aftermarket additives can damage the fuel injector system or engine.

Use Motorcraft Cetane Booster or an equivalent cetane booster additive if you suspect fuel has low cetane. Use Motorcraft Anti-Gel & Performance Improver or an equivalent additive if there is fuel gelling during cold weather.

Do not use alcohol-based additives to improve cetane quality, to prevent fuel gelling or any other use. The use of alcohol additives may result in damage to the fuel injectors and system.

The vehicle Warranty may not cover repairs needed to correct the effects of using any aftermarket product that does not meet Ford specifications.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the under seat storage compartment.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 122).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.


E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 184).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

You must refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank when it is low. If it is not refilled, vehicle speed will be limited to 50 mph (80 km/h). Drive with caution and refill the fluid tank as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

If the diesel exhaust fluid becomes contaminated your vehicle will be limited to idle speed operation. Replace the fluid immediately.

Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system will result in severe vehicle performance limitation. Vehicle speed will be limited to 5 mph (8 km/h).

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reduction system to help reduce exhaust emission levels by injecting diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Level

For the system to operate correctly, you must maintain the diesel exhaust fluid level.



A warning lamp will illuminate when the diesel exhaust fluid level is low and needs to be refilled. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

The warning lamp will illuminate approximately 500 mi (800 km) before the diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty. Refill the tank as soon as possible.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the diesel exhaust fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

Continued driving without refilling the fluid will result in:

- Vehicle speed being limited. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the information display.
- Further vehicle operation without refilling the diesel exhaust fluid will cause the engine to run at idle speed.

Note: *You must add a minimum of 3.2 qt (3 L) for your vehicle to exit the run at idle speed mode.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank

WARNINGS

Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and contact a physician. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and contact a physician immediately.

Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a diesel exhaust fluid container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

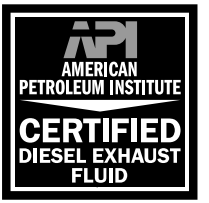
Do not put diesel exhaust fluid in the fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E172245

The diesel exhaust fluid tank filler neck is located below the fuel filler neck and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at a diesel exhaust fluid filling station or a diesel exhaust fluid container. We recommend Motorcraft® diesel exhaust fluid, the containers are spill proof and stop the flow of fluid when the tank is full. The capacity of the diesel exhaust fluid tank is 21 liters.



E163354

You must only use diesel exhaust fluid that is certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Note: *You must open the fuel filler door before you can open the diesel exhaust fluid filler door.*

Note: *Immediately wash off any diesel exhaust fluid that has spilled on to a painted surface with soapy water.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump

Filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank using a pump is similar to a refuelling your vehicle. The diesel exhaust fluid pump nozzle will shut off automatically when the tank is full.

Note: *Some filling stations utilize a magnetic mechanism in the pump nozzle that may prevent refilling the diesel exhaust fluid tank. To overcome this issue you will need to locate another filling station or use a refill container.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank Using a Container

The following procedure applies to Motorcraft diesel exhaust fluid or similar fluid containers. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the diesel exhaust fluid container cap. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.
2. Remove the diesel exhaust fluid tank filler cap.
3. Insert the spout in to the filler neck until the seal on the spout seats on to the filler neck. Pour the fluid in to the tank. When the tank is full the fluid will stop flowing automatically.
4. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the diesel exhaust fluid filler neck. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back in to the container.
5. Remove the spout from the diesel exhaust fluid filler neck. Replace the diesel exhaust fluid tank cap.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

6. Remove the spout from the diesel exhaust fluid container and replace the cap.

Note: *If there is diesel exhaust fluid left in the container retain it for later use. The spout is re-useable. Wash the spout with clean water prior to storage. Do not use the diesel exhaust fluid spout with any other fluid.*

Filling the Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank in Cold Climates

Diesel exhaust fluid may freeze if the ambient temperature is below 12ºF (-11ºC). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows diesel exhaust fluid to operate below 12ºF (-11ºC). If you do not use your vehicle for an extended period when the ambient temperature is below 12ºF (-11ºC), the fluid in the tank may freeze. If the tank is overfilled and the fluid freezes it may damage the tank. This is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Contaminated Diesel Exhaust Fluid or Inoperative Selective Catalytic Reduction System



If the system becomes contaminated or inoperative, the diesel exhaust fluid warning lamp will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display.

Continued driving without replacing the fluid or not having the system repaired will result in:

- Vehicle speed being limited. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the information display.
- Further vehicle operation without replacing contaminated diesel exhaust fluid will cause the engine to run at idle speed.

Note: *If the vehicle speed becomes limited or the engine will only run at idle speed, normal vehicle operation will not resume until you have the system repaired. To service a contaminated or inoperative system, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *You must add a minimum of 3.2 qt (3 L) for your vehicle to exit the run at idle speed mode.*

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Guidelines

- Do not put diesel exhaust fluid in the vehicle fuel tank.
- Do not overfill the diesel exhaust fluid tank.
- Do not dilute diesel exhaust fluid with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use a diesel exhaust fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between 23ºF (-5ºC) and 68ºF (20ºC).
- Do not store a diesel exhaust fluid container in your vehicle.
- Diesel exhaust fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.

Approximate Diesel Exhaust Fluid Usage

The chart below illustrates the approximate diesel exhaust fluid usage for the given distances traveled under various driving conditions. Usage may vary depending on:

- Driving style.
- Towing a trailer.
- Vehicle load.
- Engine idling time.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Driving conditions	Approximate diesel exhaust fluid usage per tank mi (km)
Primary trailer tow, aggressive driving	1,100–4,100 (1,770–6,600)
City drive	4,100–6,500 (6,600–10,460)
Steady highway drive	6,500–10,500 (10,460–16,900)

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

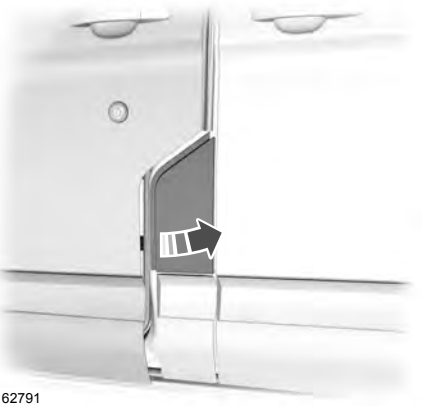
Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*

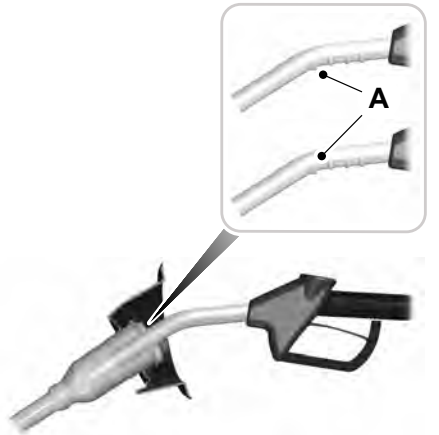


E162791

Note: *You must unlock your vehicle and open the left-hand front door before opening and closing the fuel tank filler door.*

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.

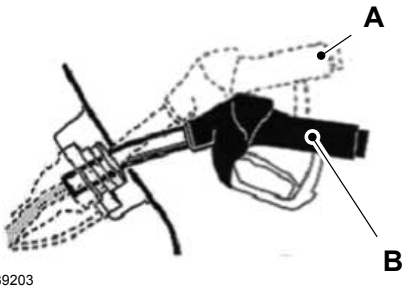
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E139202

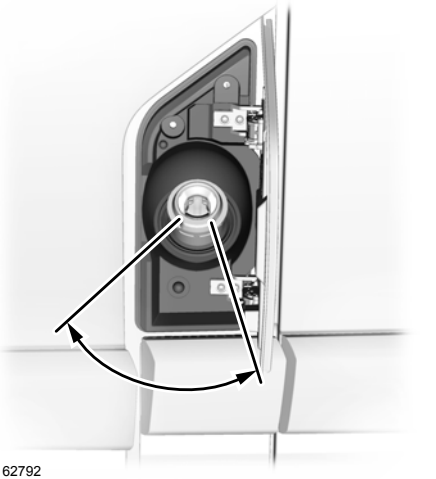
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E162792

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.

Note: *Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.*

System Warnings (If Equipped)

If the fuel filler inlet does not fully close a warning message appears in the information display.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
4. Check the fuel filler inlet and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement.
5. Insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle in to the fuel tank filler pipe opening. This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel filler inlet from fully closing.

Note: *If this action corrects the problem the message may not reset immediately. If the message remains and the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

- The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty, before the first fuel filler nozzle automatic shutoff event.
- The advertised capacity is equal to the volumetric difference between actual fuel fill before the first fuel filler nozzle automatic shutoff event and the fuel quantity when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281). It is the usable capacity minus the empty reserve.
- Due to the empty reserve, you may be able to add more fuel than the advertised capacity of the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,200 km) to 3,000 mi (4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy.

Conditions

- Heavily loading your vehicle reduces fuel economy.
- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You will get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

An incorrectly operating or damaged exhaust system may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have an authorized dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work correctly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information carried out according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements, or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be the equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Illumination of any of the following warning lamps, indicators or vehicle symptoms could indicate that the emission control system is not working correctly.

- Coolant temperature warning lamp.
- Charging system warning lamp.
- Service engine soon indicator.
- Fluid leaks.
- Strange odors.
- Excessive exhaust smoke.
- Loss of engine power.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please see your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists an authorized dealer in correctly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples of temporary malfunctions are:

- The vehicle has run out of fuel.
- Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel.
- The engine may misfire or run rough.
- The fuel filler door may not have been closed correctly. See **Refueling** (page 127).
- Driving through deep water. The electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, correctly closing the fuel filler door or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should not illuminate. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city or highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, you may need to have your vehicle serviced. See **On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)**.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle engine or transmission has just been serviced or the battery has recently run out of charge or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, switch the ignition on for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator flashes on and off eight times, it means that your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator illuminates and remains on, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system monitors the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you may need to:

- Drive on an expressway or highway for a steady 15 minutes, followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
- Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then complete the above driving cycle.

The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Do not switch the ignition off until the above driving cycle is complete. If your vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you will have to repeat the above driving cycle.

Diesel Exhaust System: Oxidation Catalyst And Diesel Particulate Filter System

Your vehicle is fitted with a diesel particulate filter. The diesel particulate filter is an inline filter in the exhaust system that reduces carbon emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The diesel particulate filter looks similar to a traditional exhaust catalyst, except it is larger, and is part of the exhaust system under the vehicle. The filter couples to a diesel oxidation catalyst that reduces the amount of harmful exhaust emitted from the tailpipe. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During either one of these regeneration methods, you may notice a change in exhaust tone. At certain times, the information display will display various messages related to the diesel particulate filter.

Diesel Particulate Filter Maintenance

Failure to carry out active or operator commanded regeneration when advised could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle will disable the ability for active and operator commanded regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage to the diesel particulate filter requiring replacement that the Ford Warranty may not cover. If your vehicle is not fitted with operator commanded regeneration, check with an authorized dealer for availability.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Passive Regeneration

During passive regeneration, the exhaust system temperature and constituents automatically clean the diesel particulate filter, or reduce the soot level, by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs naturally during normal engine operating conditions, at varying levels depending on driving conditions.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full of exhaust particles, the engine control module will command the exhaust system to clean the diesel particulate filter through a process called active regeneration. Active regeneration requires the engine computer to raise the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles. During cleaning, the particles convert to harmless gasses. Once cleaned the diesel particulate filter will then be ready to continue trapping exhaust particles.

The regeneration process operates more efficiently when you drive your vehicle at a steady speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or above for approximately 20 minutes to complete the process. The frequency and duration of regeneration will fluctuate by how you drive your vehicle, outside air temperature, and altitude. For most driving, regeneration frequency will vary from 100 mi (160 km) - 310 mi (500 km) between occurrences and each occurrence will last between 10 and 20 minutes. You can usually reduce the duration of regeneration if you maintain a constant speed above 30 mph (48 km/h).

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not driving your vehicle in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the information display will show the following messages as a reminder for you to drive in a manner to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the information display will show a cleaning exhaust filter message, which is the normal regeneration process.

System Messages

Message	Action and Description
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	You must maintain the diesel particulate filter for it to continue to function correctly. Drive in a manner to clean the diesel particulate filter. Do not disregard a system maintenance message. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of disregarding these messages.
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	You must maintain the diesel particulate filter for it to continue to function correctly. Drive in a manner to clean the diesel particulate filter. Do not disregard a system maintenance message. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of disregarding these messages.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

You can also choose operator commanded regeneration to clean the exhaust system at this point. See the following **Operator Commanded Regeneration.**

If you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic cleaning or you choose to carry out regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the engine is idling, then operator commanded regeneration must be carried out.

Operator Commanded Regeneration (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 25 mph (40 km/h), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system. Operator commanded regeneration allows you to manually start diesel particulate filter cleaning while the engine is idling. If you are not sure whether your vehicle is fitted with this feature, contact an authorized dealer.

When to Carry Out Operator Commanded Regeneration

Use the operator commanded regeneration feature when the following message appears in the information display and:

- You are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic cleaning.
- You choose to manually start cleaning the diesel particulate filter while the engine is idling.

System Message

Message	Action and Description
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	You must maintain the diesel particulate filter for it to continue to function correctly. Do not disregard a system maintenance message. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of disregarding this message.

Operator Commanded Regeneration Precautions and Safe Exhaust Position

WARNING

Failure to comply with the following instructions for operator commanded regeneration may result in fire, serious injury, death or property damage.

Before you start operator commanded regeneration, do the following:

- You must park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Move the gearshift lever to park **(P)** with the parking brake set on stable, level ground.
- Your vehicle must be 9.8 ft (3 m) - 16.4 ft (5 m) away from any obstructions and must be away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example, paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Make sure there is a minimum of 3.2 gal (12 L) of fuel in the fuel tank.
- Make sure all fluids are at the correct levels.
- Make sure that the louvers located at the tip of the exhaust are clear of any obstructions as they are used to introduce fresh air into the tailpipe to cool the exhaust gas as it leaves.

How to Start Operator Commanded Regeneration

WARNING

Stay clear of exhaust tip during regeneration. You or others can be burned.

Note: *You cannot use the operator commanded regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100 percent. The diesel particulate filter load percentage will fluctuate up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.*

Note: *During the use of operator commanded regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*



You cannot use the operator commanded regeneration if the service engine soon light is illuminated.

Using the Information Display

You can start operator commanded regeneration using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

To start operator commanded regeneration, run the engine at normal operating temperature and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Exhaust Filter Full OK = Cleaning	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
Exhaust Filter	Press the **OK** button and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate operator commanded regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Message	Action and Description
Full	
Exhaust Filter Overloaded	Press the **OK** button and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate operator commanded regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning will display.

Message	Action and Description
Exhaust Filter At Limit	Press the **OK** button and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate operator commanded regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished.

Once operator commanded regeneration starts, engine rpm will rise to approximately 2,000 - 2,500 rpm and the cooling fan will increase speed; you will hear a change in audible sound due to the fan and engine speed increase.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once operator commanded regeneration is complete, the engine rpm and fan will return to normal idling. The exhaust system will remain very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature, and altitude, operator commanded regeneration may last up to 30 minutes.



When the system is at the point of over saturation, the service engine soon light will illuminate and the following message will appear.

System Message

Message	Action and Description
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You will not be able to allow cleaning. You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Operator Commanded Regeneration with Automatic Regeneration Control (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 25 mph (40 km/h), short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system. You can switch off automatic regeneration until better driving conditions are available, for example steady high driving. You can then switch automatic regeneration back on to clean the diesel particulate filter.

Switching the Automatic Regeneration Control On and Off

To switch the automatic regeneration control on and off, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Information	Press the **OK** button.
Driver Assist	Press the **OK** button.
Auto Exh.Clean	Uncheck the box to switch automatic regeneration off. Check the box to switch automatic regeneration on.
When you switch automatic regeneration off, one of the following warning messages may be displayed.	
Exhaust Filter Full Clean Soon	The diesel particulate filter is full and you should switch the automatic regeneration control on as soon as possible.
Exhaust Filter Overloaded Clean Now	The diesel particulate filter is overloaded you must switch the automatic regeneration control on as soon as possible.
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	You must clean the diesel particulate filter immediately. Failing to do so would cause the diesel particulate filter to become blocked.

How to Interrupt or Cancel Operator Commanded Regeneration

If you need to cancel the operator commanded regeneration, press the brake pedal or switch the ignition off to stop the procedure. Depending on the amount of time you allowed the operator commanded regeneration to operate, soot may not have had sufficient time to be eliminated, but the exhaust system and exhaust gas may still be hot. If you shut your vehicle off during operator commanded regeneration, you will notice turbo flutter. This is a normal consequence caused by shutting off a diesel engine during boosted operation and is considered normal.

Filter Service and Maintenance

Over time, a slight amount of ash will build up in the diesel particulate filter, which is not removed during the regeneration process. The filter may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 119,900 mi (193,000 km) or greater, actual

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine and vehicle operating conditions. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 248,500 mi (400,000 km) depending upon vehicle operating conditions.

In both cases, the engine control system will set a service light to inform you to have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter, the engine control system will turn on a service light to inform you to have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.


Powertrain fault indicator.


Service engine soon indicator.

Resonator and Tailpipe Assembly Maintenance

WARNINGS

Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury.

The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

Note: *Additions of aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system can reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. These actions may also affect your vehicle's warranty. See the Warranty Guide for more information.*

The diesel resonator tail-pipe assembly is a uniquely functioning device that accompanies the diesel particulate filter assembly. The tail-pipe assembly serves multiple functions. First, it serves as an acoustic device to attenuate exhaust noise. Second, it provides an exit path for the exhaust from your vehicle. It also helps control the temperature of the exhaust during diesel particulate filter regeneration events. The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. You need to keep the holes clear of mud, debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of your vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Emission Control System Laws

WARNING

Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Provide adequate insulation. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

In the U.S. federal law and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system(s). Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. Ford recommends against any vehicle modification without determining applicable law.



Tampering with emissions control systems (including related sensors and the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) injection system) can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal law prohibits the following acts:

- The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use
- The use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.

The complexity of the diesel engine makes it so you are not encouraged to carry-out maintenance other than the services described in this Owner's Manual.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

Note: *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always apply the parking brake fully and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).



E175317

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

Reverse ®)

With the gearshift lever in reverse ®), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse ®).

Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

Tow/Haul Mode

WARNING

Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and your vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

TOW HAUL To activate tow/haul, press the button near the gearshift lever once. The TOW HAUL indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The tow/haul feature:

- Delays upshifts to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting.
- Provides engine braking in all forward gears, which will slow your vehicle and assist you in controlling your vehicle when descending a grade.
- Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, may downshift the transmission, slow your vehicle and control your vehicle speed when descending a hill, without pressing the accelerator pedal. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is pressed.

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button near the gearshift lever twice. The TOW HAUL light will deactivate. Tow/haul also deactivates when you power down your vehicle.

Manual (M)

With the gearshift lever in manual (M), you can change gears up or down as desired by using buttons on the shift lever. See **SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission** later in this section.

To return to normal drive (D) position, move the shift lever back from manual (M) to drive (D).

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E175317

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control. The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

Note: *The system stays in manual control until you make another shift selection (for example, drive [D]).*

Recommended Manual Shift Speeds

We recommend you upshift according to the following guide to achieve the best fuel economy for your vehicle.

Shift from	Recommended shift speeds
1 – 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 – 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 – 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 – 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 – 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

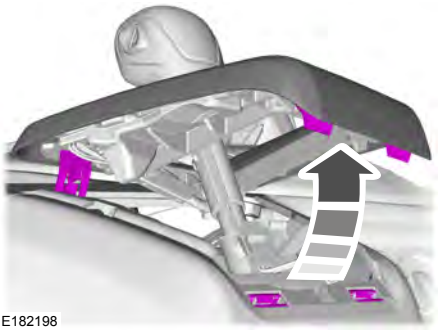
Note: *See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.*

Your vehicle has a brake-shift interlock feature. This prevents you from shifting the gearshift lever from the park (P) position, unless the brake pedal is pressed.

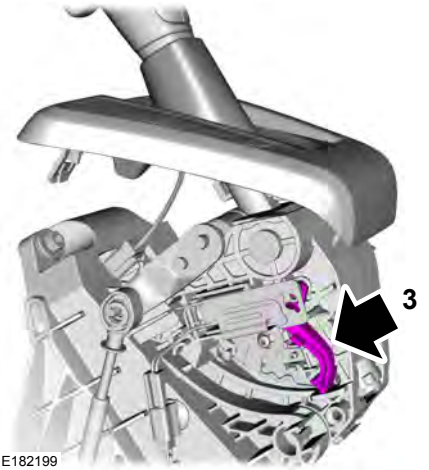
In the event of an electrical malfunction, or if the vehicle battery has run out of charge, use the following procedure to shift the gearshift lever from the park (P) position.

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

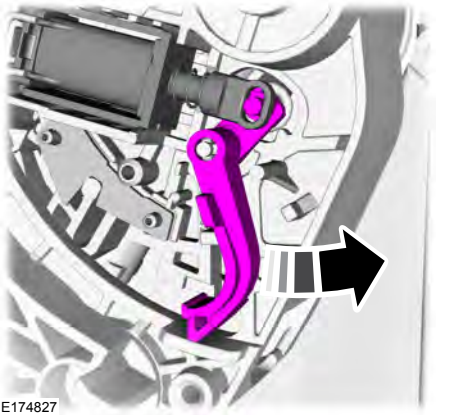

E182198

2. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the housing cover.



E182199

3. Locate the white lever, situated on the left hand side of the gearshift lever.


E174827

4. Move the white lever toward the rear of your vehicle.
5. Shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) and into neutral (N).
6. Replace the gearshift lever housing cover, apply the brake pedal, switch the ignition on and release the parking brake.

Note: *See an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 244).*



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the gearshift lever to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



If the system is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PARKING BRAKE

Center Parking Brake



E172225

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever down.

Note: *If you park your vehicle facing uphill turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle facing downhill turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever up.*

HILL START ASSIST - VEHICLES WITH: HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *The system will not operate if the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two to three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system will release the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If the stability control or traction control system detects a fault, the following may occur:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If the stability control or traction control system activates, the following may occur:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake pedal, the pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying the brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

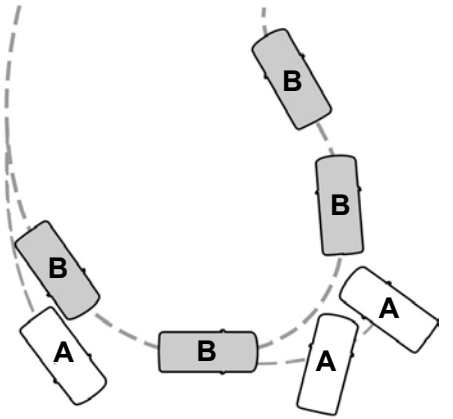
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Side-Wind Stabilization

The system applies the brakes on one side of your vehicle to reduce the effect of a sudden side-wind gust on your vehicle's path. When the system turns on, the stability and traction control light flashes, and a message may appear in the information display. You may notice a slight deceleration and may still need to make a steering correction to maintain the intended vehicle path. The system does not turn on for a continuous side-wind or during turns.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 149).



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control and roll stability control systems off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the systems deactivate.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 149).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See* ***Principle of Operation*** *(page 51).*

Note: *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 89).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

PARKING AID

WARNINGS

The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system.This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

The system warns you of objects that are within the detection zone of the bumper areas. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on. The system becomes active when you shift into reverse (R) and the speed of your vehicle is 7 mph (12 km/h) or less.



E130178

A Rear detection zone: Up to 72 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

Note: *Accessories that block the detection zone of the system may create false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

A tone will sound in the following manner when objects are near the front or rear bumpers:

- Objects detected by the rear sensors produce a low-pitched tone.
- An alert will only sound for three seconds if an object is further than 12 in (30 cm) from the side of your vehicle.

The system detects objects when you shift into reverse (R) and:

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less, and an object is approaching your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

Note: *The rate of the tone increases as your vehicle moves closer to an object.*

When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume. When the warning ends, the audio system returns to the previously set volume.

Note: *Volume reduction is not a standard feature of all audio systems.*

Switching the Parking Aid System Off



E177143

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Press the button to switch the system off. The system remains off until you switch the ignition off.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible, higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Some vehicles may not come equipped with guidelines.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E170301

The camera is on the rear cargo door.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

Distance markers are only a guide and are calculated for unloaded vehicles on an even road surface.

Using the Rear View Camera System

WARNING

Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when your place the transmission in reverse (R).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in when you reverse in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.*

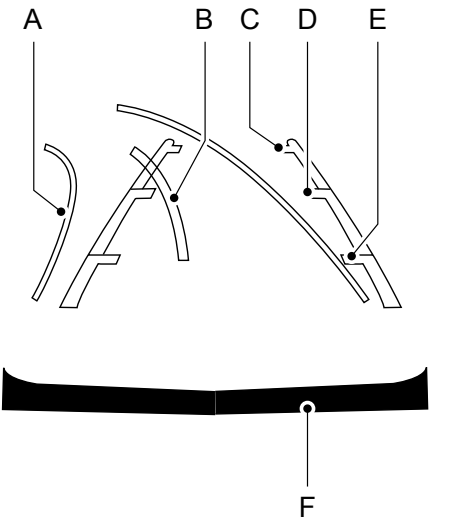
Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position when reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R). Some vehicles may not come equipped with manual zoom.*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear Camera Delay

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until your vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), or a short period of time has passed.

Vehicles with Parking Aid

The system uses red, yellow and green colored distance bars that indicate the approximate distance on an object from the rear bumper. The distance bars appear on the camera guidelines when the sensing system detects an object.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.*



E142437

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select kph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 2 kph increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Pull and release ***CAN*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Pull and release ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SPEED LIMITER

Engine Speed Limiter

Engine speed is limited to protect the engine.

Vehicle Speed Limiter - Fixed

The system prevents you from driving faster than a programmed speed.

DRIVER ALERT

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNINGS

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 85).

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The warning system has two stages:

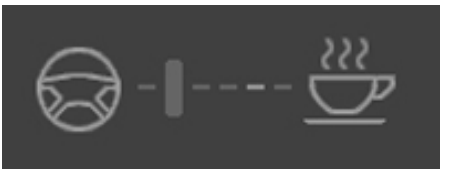
1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

System Display

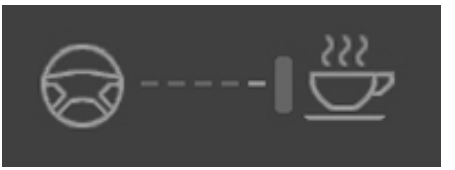
When active the system runs automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar travels from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached, the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

Lane Keeping Alert

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system may assist you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends, narrow lanes, areas under construction, during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *The system operates with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.*

Note: *The system only operates above vehicle speeds of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The sensor is behind the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system automatically detects and tracks the lane markings on the road. If the system detects that your vehicle is unintentionally drifting toward the lane markings, a warning is shown in the information display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

Note: *The vibration intensity from the steering wheel may decrease depending on the quality of the road surface.*

Using Lane Keeping Alert

Switching the System On and Off



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the direction indicator stalk.

Press the button once to turn the system on. Press the button again to turn the system off.

Note: *When you switch the system off, a warning indicator may remain illuminated in the information display. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 81).*

Setting the Steering Wheel Vibration Level

The system has three intensity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Setting the System Sensitivity

Some vehicles can adjust how quickly the system warns you. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 85).

System Warnings



E152382

When you switch the system on, an image of a vehicle showing lane markings appears in the information display. When you switch the system off, the image does not display.

When the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.
- Gray: The system will suppress the relevant lane boundary.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- The sensor may not detect the lane markings on the road.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings in the display turn red or you feel a vibration through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align your vehicle. Correct any unintended lane drift immediately.

STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

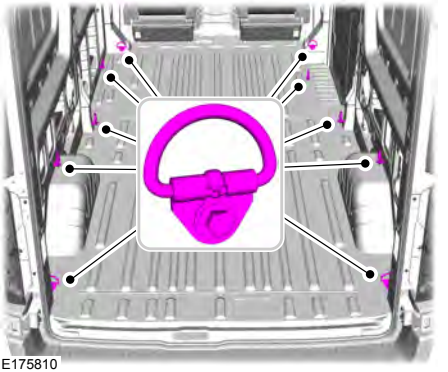
If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES

Securing Cargo



E175810

Variant	Maximum Load Value
All Van	1,125 lb (5,000 N)

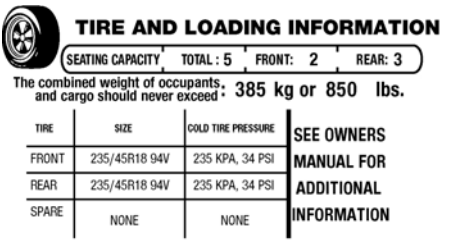
Note: *The number of load retaining fixtures may vary depending on your vehicle model.*

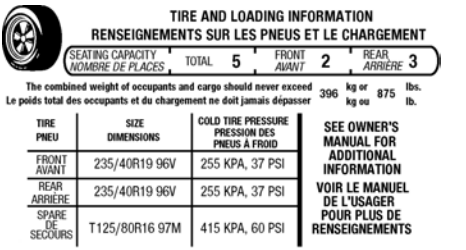
LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:

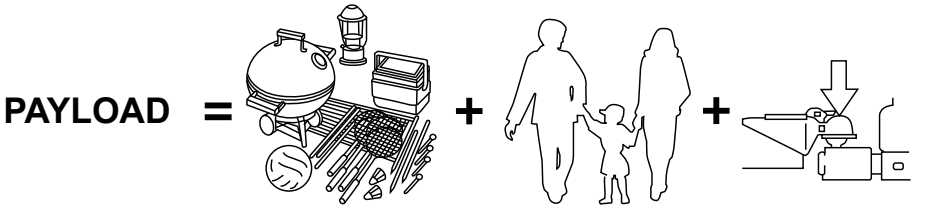




E198719

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Payload



E143816

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

WARNING

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

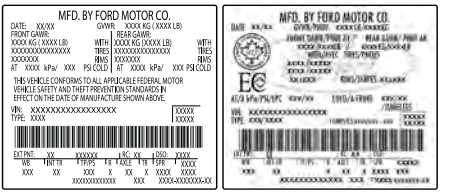
The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E198828

WARNING

Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should

be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to your vehicle, personal injury or both.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING

Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Note: *See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 170).*

Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See **Fuses** (page 196).

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop and load capacity. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in another chapter of this manual. See **Load Limit** (page 164).

You can also find information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide** available at your authorized dealer, or online.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online	
Website	http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

This feature applies your vehicle brakes at individual wheels and if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the traction control warning lamp flashes and a message will appear in the information display. Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 164).

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: *Make sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Vehicles equipped with the Trailer Tow Package or the Heavy Duty Payload Package should not exceed 55 ft² (5.1 m²) trailer frontal area.*

Note: *Exceeding this limitation may significantly reduce the performance of your towing vehicle. Selecting a trailer with a low aerodynamic drag and rounded front design helps optimize performance and fuel economy.*

Note: *For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) starting at the 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation point.*

Note: *Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as your vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to use electric trailer brakes.*

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following charts.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Van and Chassis Cab			
Powertrain	**Axle Ratio**	**Maximum GCWR**	**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight***
3.2L Power Stroke Diesel	3.31	10600 lb (4808 kg)	4750 lb (2155 kg)
3.2L Power Stroke Diesel	3.73	13500 lb (6123 kg)	7500 lb (3402 kg)
3.5L V6 GTDI	3.31	11200 lb (5080 kg)	5700 lb (2585 kg)
3.5L V6 GTDI	3.73	12600 lb (5715 kg)	7150 lb (3243 kg)
3.7L V6 TiVCT	3.73	10800 lb (4899 kg)	5350 lb (2427 kg)
3.7L V6 TiVCT	4.10	12000 lb (5450 kg)	6700 lb (3039 kg)

*Calculated with SAE J2807 method.

Wagon			
Powertrain	**Axle Ratio**	**Maximum GCWR**	**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight***
3.2L Power Stroke Diesel	3.31	10600 lb (4808 kg)	4200 lb (1905 kg)
3.2L Power Stroke Diesel	3.73	11200 lb (5080 kg)	4650 lb (2109 kg)
3.5L V6 GTDI	3.31	11200 lb (5080 kg)	5150 lb (2336 kg)
3.7L V6 TiVCT	3.73	10800 lb (4899 kg)	4800 lb (2177 kg)
3.7L V6 TiVCT	4.10	11200 lb (5080 kg)	5200 lb (2359 kg)

*Calculated with SAE J2807 method.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio. See the previous charts.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:

- Vehicle curb weight
- Hitch hardware weight, such as a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware
- Driver weight
- Passenger(s) weight
- Payload, cargo and luggage weight
- Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

Note: *The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.*

Note: *Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.*

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has covered at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km). See **Breaking-In** (page 180).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the correct installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

Refer to **Load Carrying** for load specification terms found on the tire label, Safety Compliance label and instructions on calculating your vehicle's maximum load. See **Load Limit** (page 164).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



E163167

Your vehicle is fitted with both a 7 pin and 4 pin trailer wiring connector.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a correctly fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions. Some seven-position connectors may have the SAE J2863 logo, which confirms that it is the correct wiring connector and works correctly with your vehicle.

Color	Function
Yellow	Left turn signal and brake lamp.
White	Ground (-).
Blue	Electric brakes.
Green	Right turn signal and brake lamp.
Orange	Battery (+).
Brown	Running lamps.
Grey	Reverse lamps.

Tow Hitch

WARNING

Do not exceed the lesser of the vehicle or trailer hitch rating. Rating will vary depending on vehicle equipment. Vehicle stability and handling can be impaired if vehicle or trailer hitch is over-loaded. Do not cut, drill, weld or modify trailer hitches. Modifying trailer hitches can reduce hitch rating. Serious injury or death can result from over-loaded vehicle or trailer hitch.

Do not use a tow hitch that either clamps on to the bumper or attaches to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that between 10% and 15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

Weight Distributing Hitches

A weight distribution hitch is not recommended for use with your vehicle.

Safety Chains

WARNING

Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.

Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your vehicle's tow hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not connect trailer hydraulic brake systems directly to the vehicle brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a crash greatly increase.

Electric, manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them correctly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. Trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

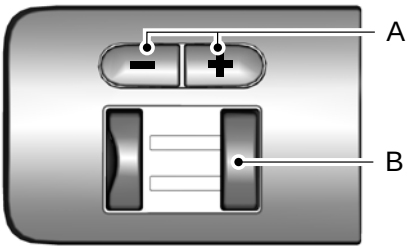
Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller

WARNING

The Ford trailer brake controller has been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and electric-over-hydraulic brakes. It will not turn on the hydraulic surge-style trailer brakes. It is the responsibility of the customer to make sure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are correctly made. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.



E163166

A Manual control lever.

B Gain adjustment buttons.

When used correctly, the trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure

Slide the manual control lever to the left to turn on the trailer's electric brakes. They work independently of the tow vehicle's braking system. See **Procedure for adjusting the gain setting** for instructions on correct use of this feature. If you use the manual control while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

1. Press the **+** and **-** buttons to adjust the brake controller's power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. You can increase the gain setting to 10 (maximum trailer braking) or decrease it to zero (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button raises or lowers the setting continuously.

The gain setting displays in the information display as:

Message
Trailer Brake
Gain:

Note: *Using the manual control lever illuminates the trailer's brake lamps and your vehicle's brake lamps, except the center high-mounted brake lamp, if you make the correct electrical connection to the trailer.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The controller shows gain setting, output bar graph and the trailer connectivity status in the information display as follows:

Message	Action and Description
Trailer Brake Gain: No Trailer	Displays the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain setting. This also displays if you use the manual control lever or make gain adjustments with no trailer connected.
Trailer Brake Gain: Output:	Displays when you press your vehicle's brake pedal, or upon use of the manual control lever. Bar indicators illuminate in the information display to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output; six bars indicate maximum output.
Trailer Connected	Displays when the system senses a correct trailer wiring connection during a given ignition cycle. For example a trailer with electric trailer brakes.
Trailer Disconnected	Displays when the system senses a trailer connection and then a disconnection, either intentional or unintentional, during a given ignition cycle, this is accompanied by a single audible tone. It also displays if a vehicle or trailer-wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message can also display if you use the manual control lever without a trailer connected.

Procedure for Adjusting the Gain Setting

The gain setting sets the trailer brake controller for the specific towing condition. You should change the setting as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The gain should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

Note: *Only carry out this procedure in a traffic-free environment at speeds of approximately 20-25 mph (30-40 km/h).*

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and correctly adjusted. See a trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. Use the gain adjustment **+** and **-** buttons to increase or decrease the gain setting to the desired starting point. A gain setting of six is a good starting point for heavier loads.
4. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20-25 mph (30-40 km/h) and slide the manual control lever completely.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

5. If the trailer wheels lock, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat steps four and five until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

System Warning Messages

Message	Action and Description
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Displays in response to faults sensed by the trailer brake controller, accompanied by a single tone. If this message appears, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The controller may still function, but performance may be degraded.
Wiring Fault on Trailer	Displays when there is a short circuit on the electric brake output wire. If the message displays, accompanied by a single tone, with no trailer connected, the problem is with your vehicle wiring between the trailer brake controller and the 7-pin connector. If the message only displays with a trailer connected, the problem is with the trailer wiring. Consult a trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground, for example a chaffed wire, short to voltage, for example a pulled pin on trailer emergency breakaway battery or the trailer brakes may be drawing too much current.

Note: *An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. However, the Ford Warranty does not cover this diagnosis if the fault is with the trailer.*

Points to Remember

- Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.
- Adjust gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.
- Adjust gain setting, using the procedure above, whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from when the gain was initially set.
- Only use the manual control lever for correct adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in instability of trailer or tow vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- The trailer brake controller is fitted with a feature that reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.
- The controller interacts with the brake control system and powertrain control system of your vehicle to provide the best performance on different road conditions.
- Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brake system whether you attach a trailer or not.
- When you switch the engine off, the controller output is disabled and the display and module shut down. The controller module and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed or dealer-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

Trailer Lamps

WARNING

Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in correct trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lamps, brake lamps, turn signals and hazard warning lamps are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) until you drive your vehicle at least 495 mi (800 km). See **Breaking-In** (page 180).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check the tow hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position park (**P**) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or on hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If the transmission is fitted with a Grade Assist, **Tow/Haul** feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- If your vehicle is fitted with AdvanceTrac with roll stability control (RSC), this system may turn on during typical cornering maneuvers with a heavily loaded trailer. This is normal. Turning the corner at a slower speed while towing may reduce this tendency.
- If you are towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at the gross combined weight rating (or any combination of these factors), consider refilling your vehicle's rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant (if the axle is not already filled with it). See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  - Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  - Set your vehicle parking brake.
  - Place the automatic transmission in position park (**P**).
  - Place wheel chocks in front of and at the back of the trailer wheels. (Trailer wheel chocks are not included with your vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Water Craft (PWC)

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.*

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain or transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You shift into Neutral (N). If you cannot shift into Neutral (N), you may need to override the transmission. See **Transmission** (page 141).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 95).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage the transmission during towing.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, for example when using a vehicle transport trailer. Otherwise, you cannot tow your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. The engine also needs to break in. Avoid hard accelerations and driving too fast for the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). If possible, avoid carrying heavy loads up steep grades during the break-in period.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 79).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13ºF (-25ºC).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

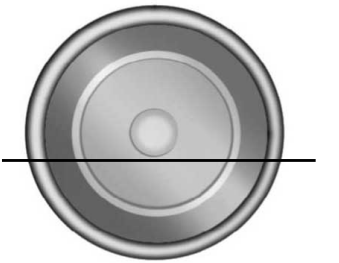
WARNING

Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



E176913

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (7.6 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.5 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

For complete program coverage details you may contact your dealer, you can call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Switch the hazard warning flashers on when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard.

Press the button to switch the hazard warning flashers on. The front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to switch the hazard warning flashers off.

Note: *Prolonged use of the hazard warning flashers will cause the battery to run out of charge. There may be insufficient power to restart the engine.*

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

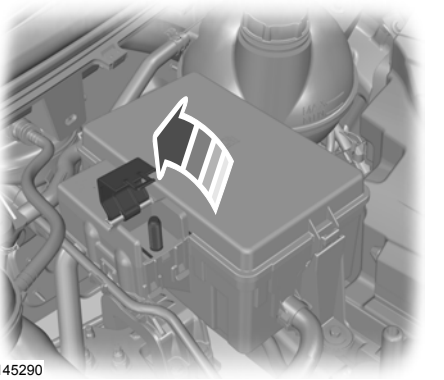
Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch, and switch off all accessories.

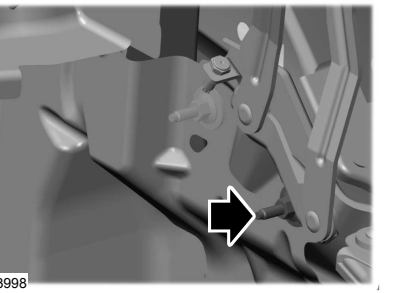
Your vehicle has a positive (+) access terminal and a negative (-) grounding connection point that you can access under the hood, even though the actual battery is under the driver seat. You can jump your vehicle using these points.

The positive (+) access terminal is next to the fuse box, under a red cap. To access the positive (+) terminal, lift the red cap up.



E145290

The negative (-) terminal is a post, located on the driver side, near the hood hinge. It is a grounding connection point, so you will need to remove the rubber covering first.



E183998

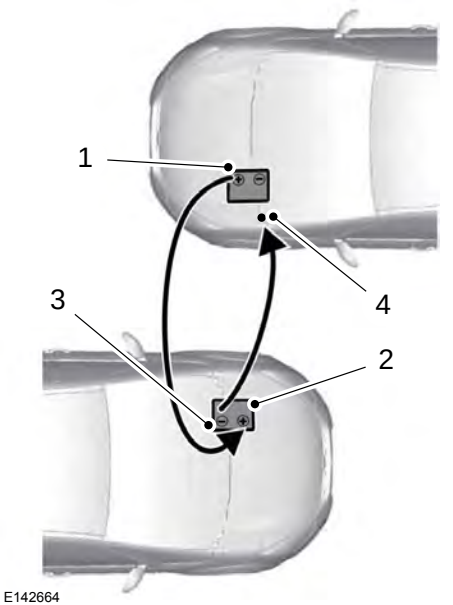
Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) access terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the grounding connection point of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

WARNING

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

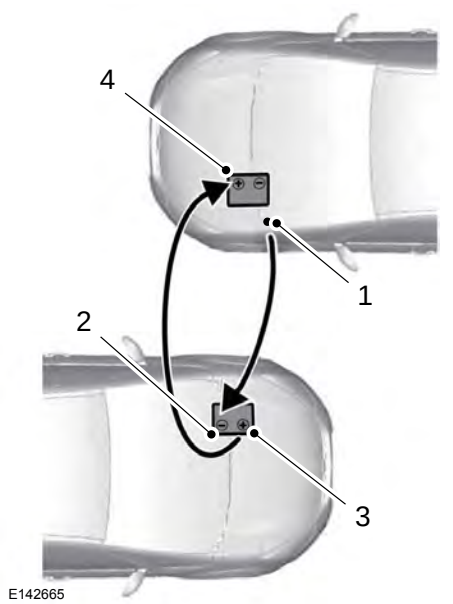
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the grounding connection point of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) access terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

After you start the disabled vehicle and remove the jumper cables, allow your vehicle to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

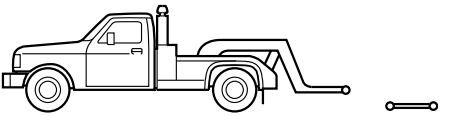
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

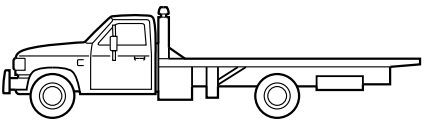
The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

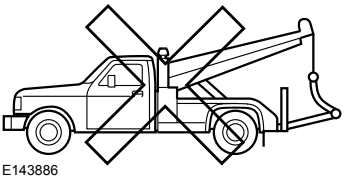
The horn and indicators will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE






E143886

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
www.owner.ford.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
www.ford.ca

Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.

Ford: 80004443673
Lincoln: 80004441067
If calling from the UAE: 80004441066
If calling from the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 8008443673
If calling from Kuwait: 22280384

FAX: +971 4 3327266
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company by emailing **expcac@ford.com**.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

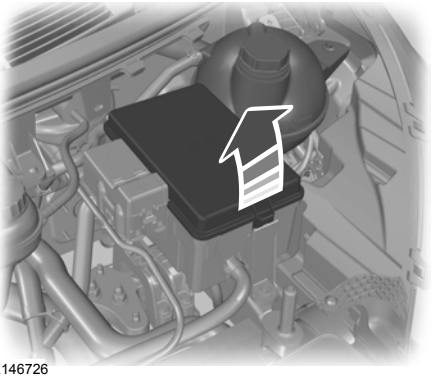
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm (English)
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm (French)
Phone	1–800–333–0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.ford.ca
Phone	1–800–565-3673

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

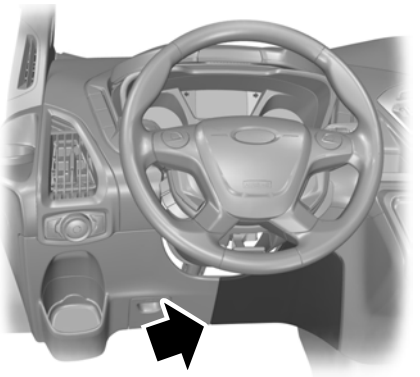
Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E146726

For item location: See **Under Hood Overview** (page 213).

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



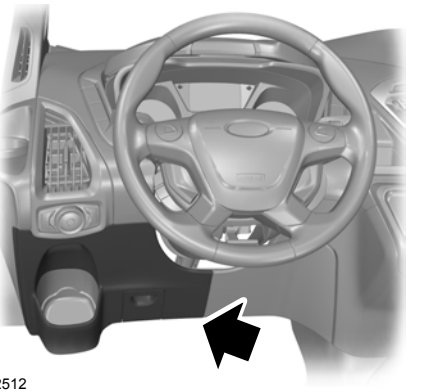
E152513

This is located behind the removable trim panel.

Pre-fuse Box

This is located under the driver's seat.

Body Control Module Fuse Box



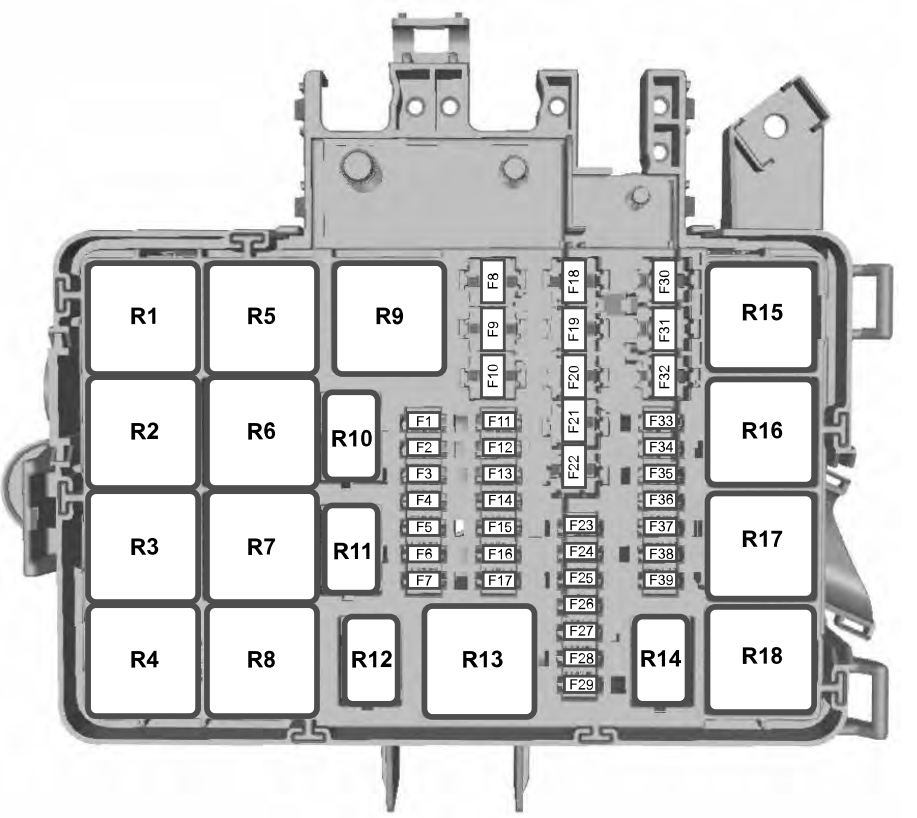
E152512

This is located behind the removable trim panel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E148826

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	10A	Selective Catalytic Reduction - Diesel.
F2	15A	Selective Catalytic Reduction - Diesel.
F3	15A	Selective Catalytic Reduction - Diesel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F4	10A	Selective Catalytic Reduction - Diesel.
F5	3A	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer - Diesel. Glow plug monitor - Diesel.
F6	-	Not used.
F7	7.5A	Automatic transmission control module ignition feed.
F8	20A	Cooling fan - Gasoline.
F9	-	Not used.
F10	30A	Power step and heated seats.
F11	10A	Air conditioning clutch.
F12	20A	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer glow plug - Diesel.
F13	-	Not used.
F14	3A	Selective Catalytic Reduction - ignition - Diesel.
F15	-	Not used.
F16	10A	Fuel pump relay - Diesel.
	20A	Fuel pump relay - Gasoline.
F17	15A	Automatic transmission module (battery feed) - Diesel.
F18	30A	Anti-lock brake system. Stability assist pump - Diesel. Engine compartment fuse box #F16 - Gasoline. Engine compartment fuse box #F16, #F17 - Diesel.
F19	30A	Starter solenoid.
F20	60A	Glow plugs - Diesel.
F21	60A	Ignition relay 3.
F22	40A	Selective Catalytic Reduction relay feed.
	40A	Electric vacuum pump relay feed - Gasoline.
F23	10A	PROTECTED CIRCUIT FUSE.
F24	-	Not used.
F25	10A	Not used (spare).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

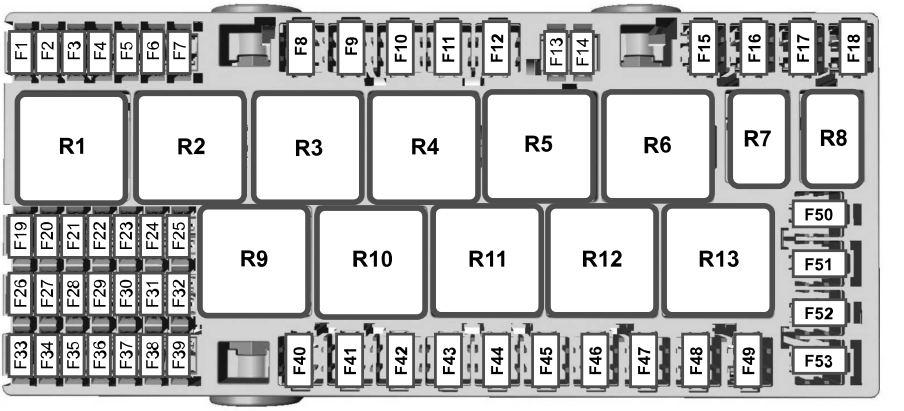
Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F26	20A	PROTECTED CIRCUIT FUSE.
F27	-	Not used.
F28	7.5A	Crankcase sensor - Diesel.
F29	3A	Ignition feed - Audio - Gasoline.
	7.5A	Crank case ventilation heater – Diesel.
F30	60A	Single cooling fan - Diesel.
	40A	Twin cooling fan - Gasoline.
F31	40A	Twin cooling fan 2 - Gasoline.
F32	30A	Windshield wiper motor.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	-	Not used.
F35	20A	Powertrain control system supply - Gasoline.
	15A	Powertrain control system supply - Diesel.
F36	20A	Mass air flow sensor - Gasoline.
	15A	PM sensor - Diesel. Urea quality sensor - Diesel. NOX sensor 1, 2 - Diesel.
F37	7.5A	Volume control valve - Diesel.
F38	20A	Air conditioning clutch - Gasoline.
	7.5A	Air conditioning clutch - Diesel.
F39	7.5A	UEGO, VAP PUMP, EBYPASS, EDF, HEDF - 3.7L gasoline engine.
	10A	UEGO, VAP PUMP, EBYPASS, EDF, HEDF - 3.5L gasoline engine.
	15A	UEGO, VAP PUMP, EBYPASS, EDF, HEDF - Diesel.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Ignition 3.
R2	Not used.
R3	Not used.
R4	Not used.
R5	Cooling fan - Gasoline.
R6	Windshield wiper - on and off.
R7	Windshield wiper - low and high speed.
R8	Electrical Vacuum Pump - Gasoline.
R9	Starter motor.
R10	Air conditioning clutch.
R11	Fuel vaporizer system glow plug - Diesel.
R12	Fuel injection pump.
R13	Not used.
R14	Not used.
R15	Low-speed and high-speed cooling fan.
R16	Selective Catalytic Reduction - Diesel.
R17	Powertrain control module.
R18	High speed cooling fan.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel



E148827

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	10A	Airbag module.
F2	4A	Anti-lock brake system with electronic stability control. Parking brake.
F3	-	Not used.
F4	10A	Trailer tow back-up lamp relay.
F5	20A	Cutaway body connectors.
F6	-	Not used.
F7	-	Not used.
F8	40A	AC power outlet socket.
F9	30A	Trailer brake module.
F10	30A	Driver power seat.
F11	30A	Passenger power seat.
F12	30A	Trailer tow park lamp relay.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F13	25A	Anti-lock brake system with electronic stability control valves.
F14	5A	Powertrain control module B+ relay.
F15	40A	Powertrain control module power relay.
F16	40A	Body control module power feed.
F17	40A	Anti-lock brake system.
F18	40A	Modified vehicle connections.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	5A	Heated exterior mirror relay. Heated rear window.
F21	10A	Modified vehicle ignition connections.
F22	15A	Passenger compartment fuse panel (Body control module).
F23	7.5A	Air conditioning control module.
F24	10A	Cutaway body connectors.
F25	7.5A	Interior lighting. Power point relay control.
F26	10A	Heated exterior mirrors.
F27	20A	Heated rear window.
F28	20A	Heated rear window.
F29	10A	Rear parking aid camera. Lane keeping system. Electro mirror.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	10A	Trailer brake ignition feed.
F32	10A	Interior lighting.
F33	10A	Driver heated seat.
F34	10A	Passenger heated seat.
F35	5A	Mirror switch. Driver's power window switch.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

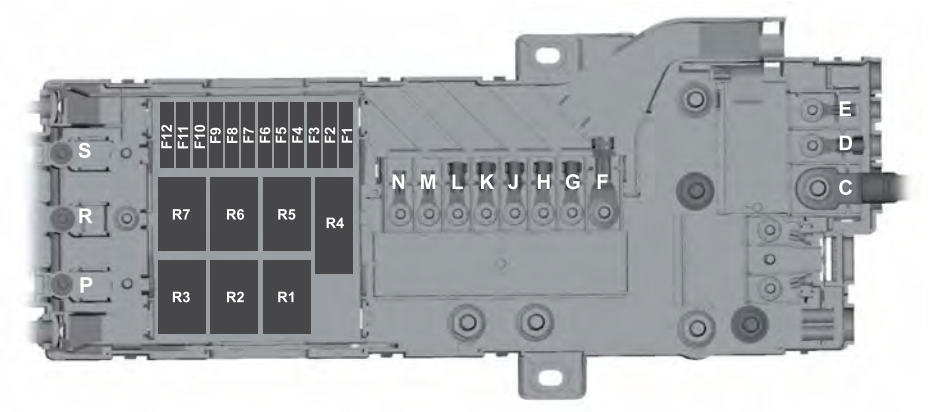
Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F36	20A	Horn.
F37	7.5A	SYNC module. GPS module.
F38	5A	Blower motor relay. Horn relay. Windshield wiper relay.
F39	7.5A	Remote keyless entry. Rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning. Trailer tow backup relay coil. Park lamp relay coil.
F40	40A	Front blower motor.
F41	40A	Rear blower motor.
F42	40A	Heated rear window.
F43	30A	Trailer socket. Trailer tow module.
F44	60A	Auxiliary power points.
F45	40A	Trailer connectors B+ supply. Trailer tow module.
F46	30A	Power windows.
F47	20A	Cigar lighter socket.
F48	20A	Rear auxiliary power points.
F49	20A	Front auxiliary power points.
F50	60A	Ignition relay 1.
F51	30A	Power step or heated seats.
	60A	Power step and heated seats.
F52	40A	Modified vehicle connections.
F53	40A	Modified vehicle connections.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Not used (spare).
R2	Auxiliary power points.
R3	Trailer tow parking lamp.
R4	Not used.
R5	Power windows.
R6	Ignition 1.
R7	Horn.
R8	Trailer tow back-up lamp.
R9	Front blower motor.
R10	Rear blower motor.
R11	Heated rear window. Heated exterior mirrors.
R12	Heated seats.
R13	Modified vehicle connections.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Pre-fuse Box



E191034

Fusible link	Fusible link rating	Circuits protected
C	470A	Engine compartment fuse box. Starter motor. Alternator.
D	100A	Passenger compartment fuse panel. Body control module fuse box.
E	-	Not used.
F	200A	Passenger compartment fuse panel (SRBI BB3).
G	100A	Passenger compartment fuse panel (SRB1 BB1).
H	80A	Auxiliary heater - Diesel.
J	80A	Modified vehicle connections (SRB F52 and F53).
K	100A	Engine junction box feed.
L	100A	Passenger compartment fuse panel.
M	60A	Passenger compartment fuse panel supply (Body control module).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Fusible link	Fusible link rating	Circuits protected
N	60A	Passenger compartment fuse panel supply (Body control module).
P	60A	Auxiliary power point 1 (Customer connection point).
R	60A	Auxiliary power point 2 (Customer connection point).
S	60A	Auxiliary power point 3 (Customer connection point).

Auxiliary Fuse Panel (Upfitters)

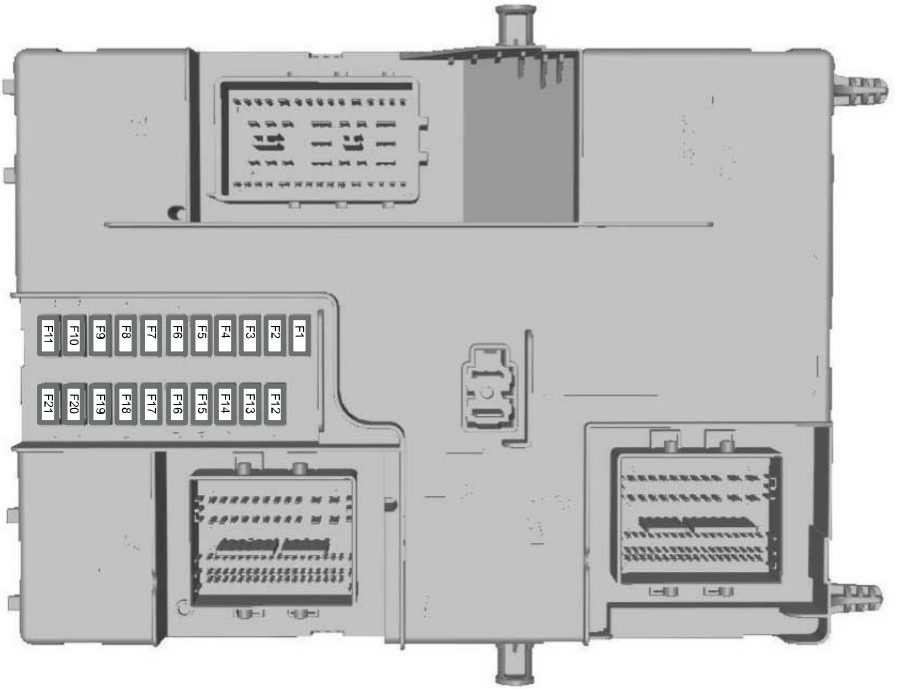
Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	-	Not used.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	-	Not used.
F4	-	Not used.
F5	20A	R4 relay power.
F6	20A	R3 relay power.
F7	20A	R2 relay power.
F8	20A	R1 relay power.
F9	-	Not used.
F10	-	Not used.
F11	-	Not used.
F12	3A	Switch power.

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Upfitter 1.
R2	Upfitter 2.
R3	Upfitter 3.
R4	Upfitter 4.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Relay	Circuits switched
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.
R7	Not used.

Body Control Module



E148830

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	15A	Central locking system 2.
F2	15A	Central locking system 1.
F3	15A	Ignition switch.
F4	5A	Parking assist control module. Brake transmission shift interlock.
F5	5A	Rain sensor module.
F6	15A	Windshield washer pump.
F7	-	Not used.
F8	-	Not used.
F9	10A	Right-hand high beam.
F10	10A	Left-hand high beam.
F11	25A	Right-hand exterior lamps. Left-hand position lamps.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	15A	On-board diagnostic. Battery saver.
F14	25A	Turn signal indicator. Power windows delayed accessory. Lane departure sensor heated windshield pad.
F15	25A	Left-hand exterior lamps. Right-hand position lamps. High mounted stoplamp.
F16	20A	Audio unit. Navigation unit.
F17	7.5A	Instrument panel cluster. Heater control.
F18	10A	Headlamp switch module. Steering wheel module. Stoplamp switch supply.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F19	5A	Front control/display interface module.
F20	5A	Ignition passive anti-theft system.
F21	3A	Accessory relay, customer access feed.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

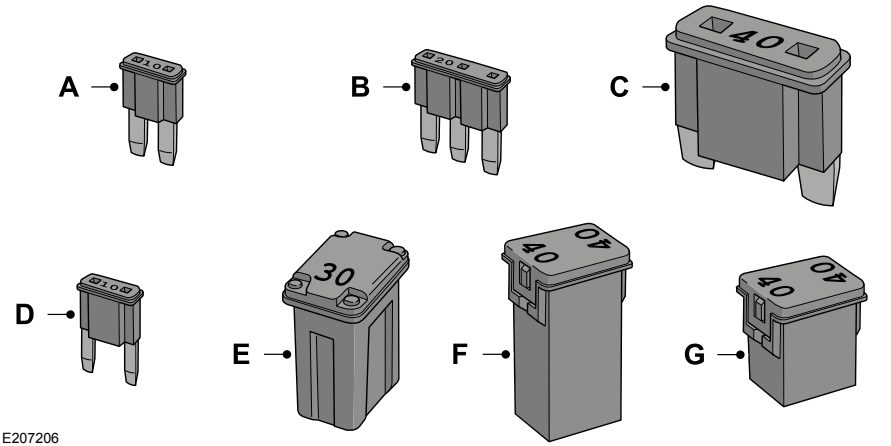
Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



E207206

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

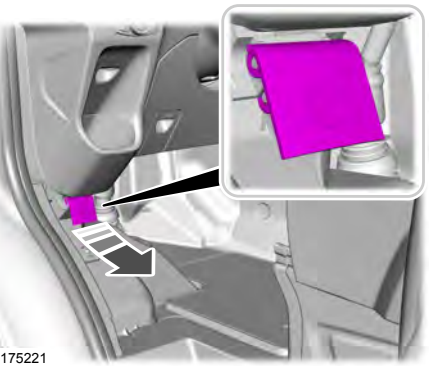
WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

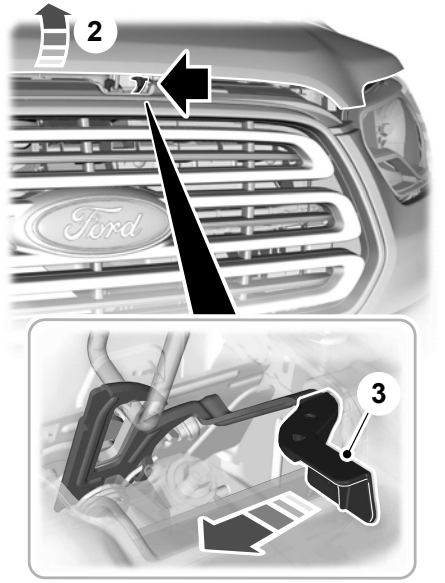
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood


E175221

1. Pull the hood release lever.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E217707

2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Move the catch to the left.



E87786

4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

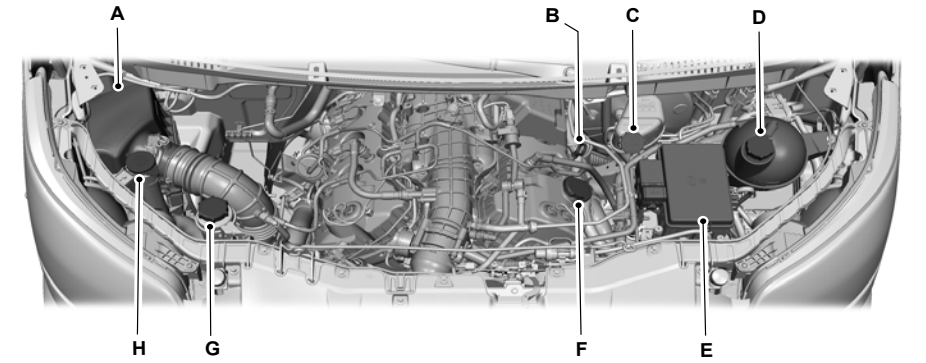
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8–12 in (20–30 cm).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.5L ECOBOOST™



E174601

A Air cleaner. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 237).

B Engine oil dipstick*. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 216).

C Brake fluid reservoir*. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 223).

D Engine coolant reservoir*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).

E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 196).

F Engine oil filler cap*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).

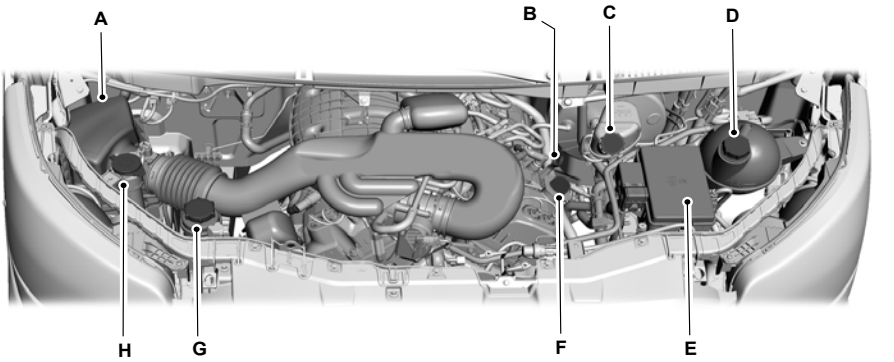
G Power steering fluid reservoir*. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 223).

H Washer fluid reservoir*. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 223).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.7L



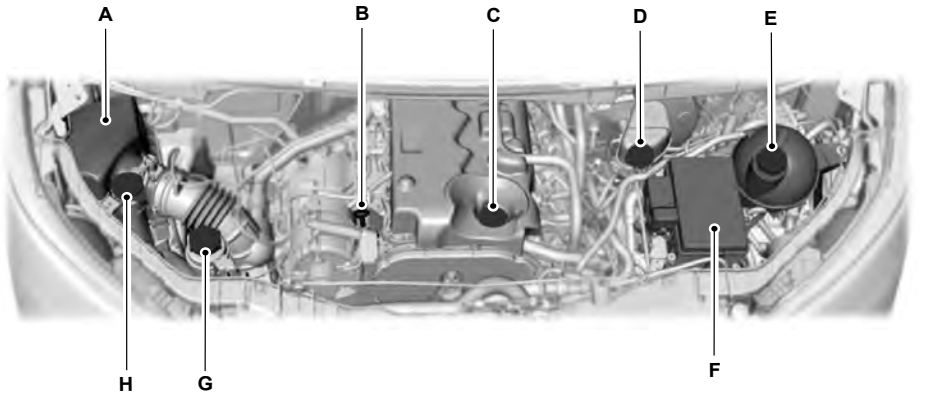
E174602

A Air cleaner. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 237).
B Engine oil dipstick*. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 216).
C Brake fluid reservoir*. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 223).
D Engine coolant reservoir*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).
E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 196).
F Engine oil filler cap*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).
G Power steering fluid reservoir*. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 223).
H Washer fluid reservoir*. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 223).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL



A Air cleaner. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 237).

B Engine oil dipstick*. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 216).

C Engine oil filler cap*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 216).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir*. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 223).

E Engine coolant reservoir*. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).

F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 196).

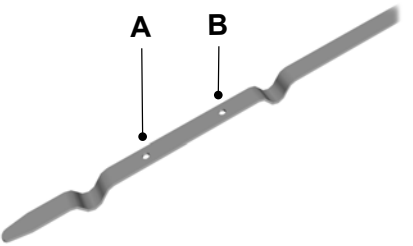
G Power steering fluid reservoir*. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 223).

H Washer fluid reservoir*. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 223).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

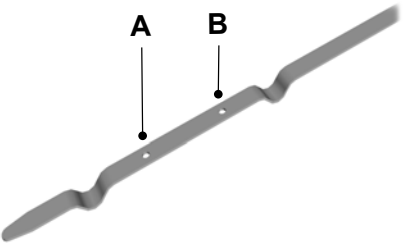
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 3.5L ECOBOOST™



E174604

A Minimum
B Maximum

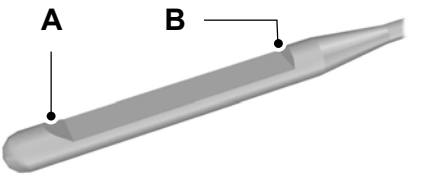
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 3.7L



E174604

A Minimum
B Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL



E71362

A Minimum
B Maximum

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Note: *Check the oil level before starting the engine.*

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

CHANGING THE ENGINE OIL AND OIL FILTER

WARNINGS

Prolonged and repeated skin contact with mineral oil will result in the removal of natural fats from the skin, leading to dryness, irritation and dermatitis. In addition, used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. If skin contact occurs, wash the area thoroughly with soap or skin cleanser and water immediately.

Do not dispose of engine oils or oil filters in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Do not remove the oil pan drain plug when the engine is running.

WARNINGS

Do not remove the oil filter when the engine is running.

1. Remove the oil pan drain plug and wait for the oil to drain into a suitable container.
2. Renew the oil filter.
3. Reinstall the oil pan drain plug.
4. Refill the engine with new oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

5. Reset the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 218).

Engine Lubrication for Severe Service Operation

The following conditions define severe service operation. The Intelligent Oil Life Monitor will determine engine oil and oil filter change intervals.

- Frequent or extended idling.
- Frequent low-speed operation at 25 mph (40 km/h) or less.
- Frequent severe dust condition operation.
- Frequent off-road operation.
- Sustained ambient temperatures of -9ºF (-23ºC) or below.
- Sustained ambient temperatures of 100ºF (38ºC) or above.
- Sustained towing operation above 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Sustained high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation).
- Sustained use of diesel fuel other than ultra-low sulfur diesel (ULSD).

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine. For vehicles with push-button start, press and hold the start button for two seconds without pressing the brake pedal. Do not start the engine.
2. Press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep the accelerator and brake pedals fully pressed.
4. After three seconds, a message confirming that the reset is in progress will be displayed.
5. After 25 seconds, a message confirming that the reset is complete will be displayed.
6. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. The message confirming that the reset is complete will no longer be displayed.
8. Switch the ignition off. For vehicles with push-button start, press the start button to switch the ignition off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - E85/ GASOLINE

WARNING

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL

WARNING

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 115).

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

Note: *In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Water alone, without coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing. When you reach a service location, you must have the cooling system drained and refilled with prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See* ***Capacities and Specifications*** *(page 281).*

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS

Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power. In order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park **(P)**.
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

WARNING

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. This could cause serious personal injury. Rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

If the power steering fluid level is not between the **MAX** and **MIN** marks, add power steering fluid that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 288).

Adding Power Steering Fluid

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add power steering fluid to the **MAX** mark. Do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL

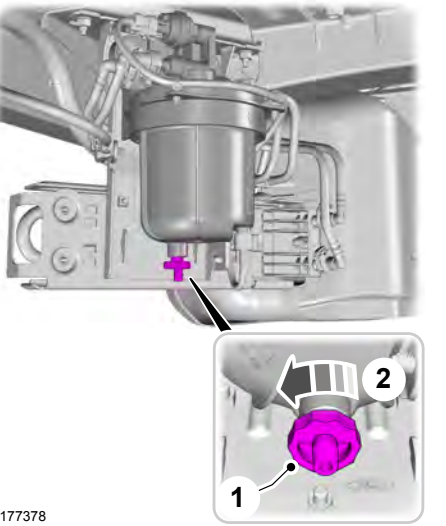
WARNING

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Your vehicle is fitted with a diesel fuel conditioner module located behind the fuel tank.

A warning lamp will illuminate and a message will be displayed when approximately 3.38 fl oz (100 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If you allow the water level to exceed this level, the water may pass through to the engine and may cause fuel injection equipment damage.

Note: *To drain the fuel filter water trap, access the underside of your vehicle.*



E177378

1. Attach a tube to the drain plug and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.
2. Loosen the drain plug by turning counterclockwise one to two turns and allow the water to drain.

Note: *The drain plug will rise when opening.*

3. Tighten the drain plug by turning clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *The drain plug will lower when closing.*

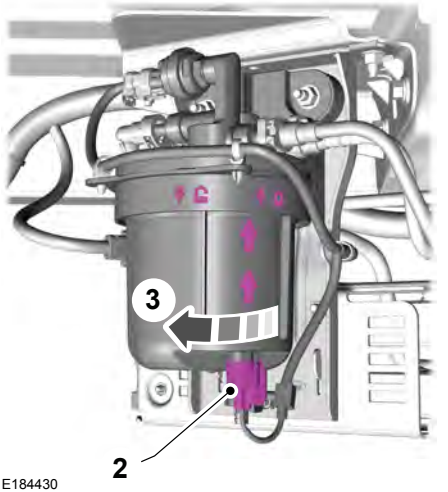
When you start the engine the water in fuel indicator lamp turns off after a short period of time.

Changing the Fuel Filter

Note: *To drain the fuel filter, access the underside of your vehicle.*

1. Drain the fuel from the filter housing.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E184430

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Rotate the housing counterclockwise to the unlock position.
4. Remove the housing and filter.
5. Replace the housing seal and lubricate.
6. Insert the new filter into housing and refit aligning the arrows in the unlock position.



E184789

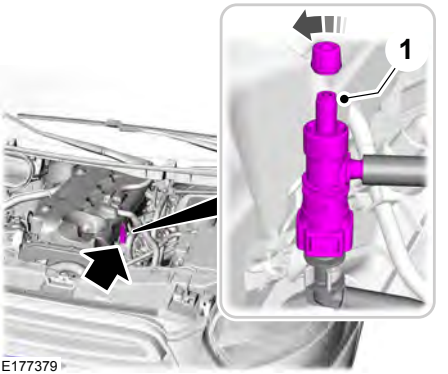
7. Rotate the housing clockwise aligning the arrows in the lock position.
8. Purge air from the system.

Note: *Only add fuel that meets the Ford specification. See* ***Fuel and Refueling*** *(page 117).*

Purging Air From the Fuel System

1. Switch the ignition on for at least 30 seconds then switch the ignition off.
2. Repeat this process six times.
3. Start the engine and maintain engine speed at 1500 RPM.
4. Wait 20 seconds.
5. If the engine is running smoothly, reduce the engine speed to idle.
6. Check for leaks.
7. Switch the ignition off.

If the Engine Does Not Start or Runs Rough



E177379

1. Remove the Schrader valve cap.
2. Attach suitable tool with a tube to the Schrader valve and place the end of the tube into a suitable container.
3. Open the Schrader valve.
4. Switch the ignition on until a steady stream of fuel can be seen coming out of the tube.
5. Switch the ignition off.
6. Remove the tool from the Schrader valve.
7. Refit the Schrader valve cap.
8. Switch the ignition on for at least 30 seconds then switch the ignition off.
9. Repeat this process three times.
10. Start the engine.

FUEL FILTER - GASOLINE

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

Removing the Battery

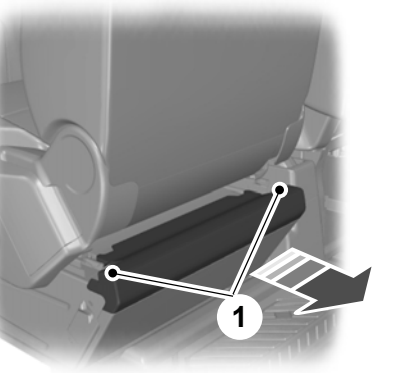
WARNINGS

- You must replace your vehicle battery with one of exactly the same specification.
- Make sure the battery box is correctly sealed.
- Your vehicle battery is heavy; take care when lifting and removing.

Note: *If you have power seats and the battery has no charge, jump-start your vehicle to move the seat. See* ***Jump Starting the Vehicle*** *(page 184).*

Note: *Where applicable you must reprogram the audio system using the keycode.*

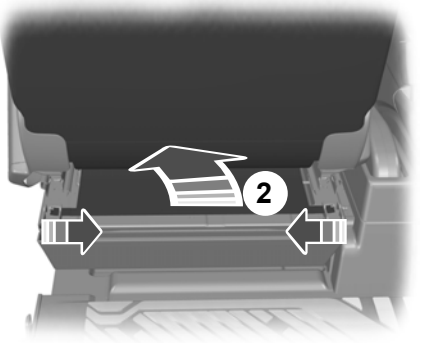
The battery is located inside your vehicle under the driver seat.



E152526

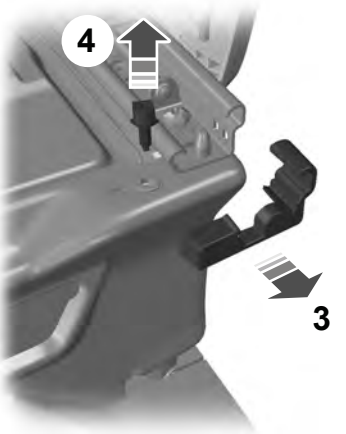
1. Fully raise the driver seat and slide the seat fully forward. Remove the cover trim by pulling up the tabs with your fingers.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



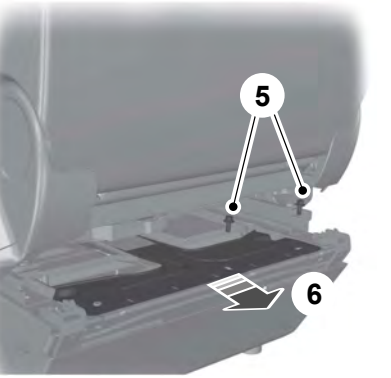
E152529

2. Unhook the cover flap and tuck it under the seat valance.



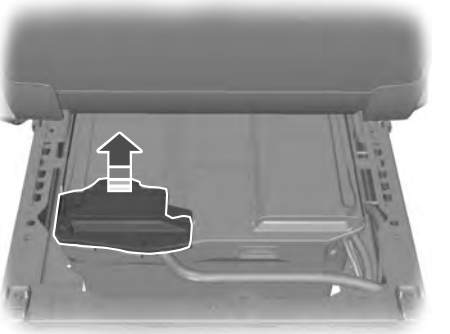
E146781

3. Remove the seat track end caps on both sides.
4. Remove the seat adjustment end stop bolts at the front of the seat on both sides.



E146773

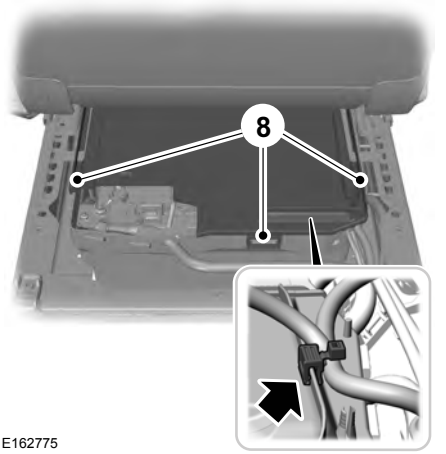
5. Remove the battery clamp and cover bolts.
6. Remove the battery clamp and cover.



E162774

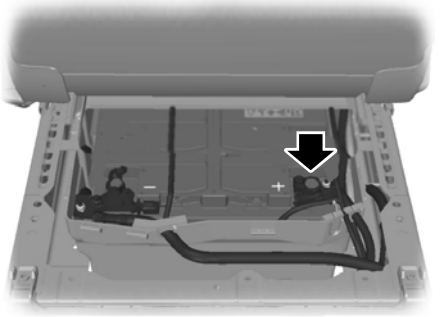
7. Remove the battery terminal cover and remove the negative (-) terminal.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E162775

8. Remove the cable securing clips from the cover. Release the retaining clips and remove the cover.



E162776

9. Remove the positive (+) terminal and remove the battery.
10. Move the second battery toward the rear of the vehicle. Disconnect the battery terminals and remove the battery.

Note: *Single batteries are mounted the opposite way around in the battery tray. The negative terminal is toward the rear of the vehicle.*

Installing the Battery

WARNING

Make sure that you securely fasten the seat runner bolts before installing the covers.

Install in the reverse order.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

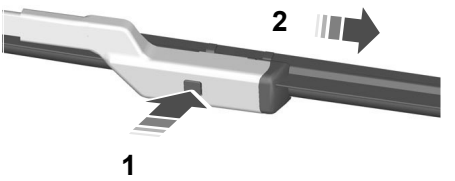
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Lift the wiper arm.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E72899

1. Press the locking button.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order. Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

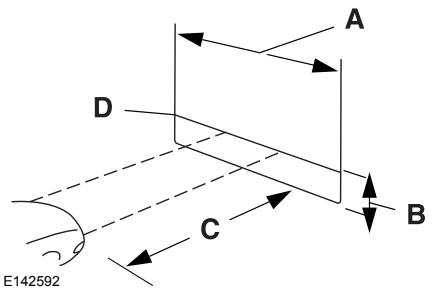
Note: *The windshield wiper blades are different in length. If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the rain sensor may not work correctly.*

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

Headlamp Aiming Target



E142592

A 8 ft (2.4 m)

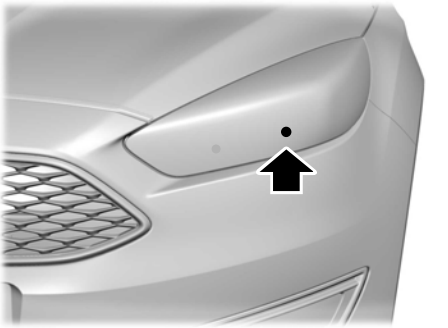
B Ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb

C 25 ft (7.6 m)

D Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure

1. Park your vehicle on level ground approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) from a wall or screen.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) long horizontal reference line on the wall or screen at this height.



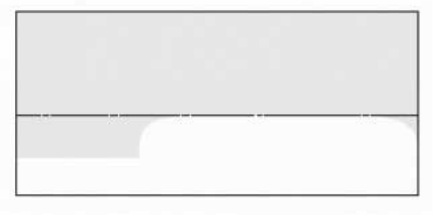
E199411

Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the bulb.*

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, you may want to block the light from the other headlamp.*

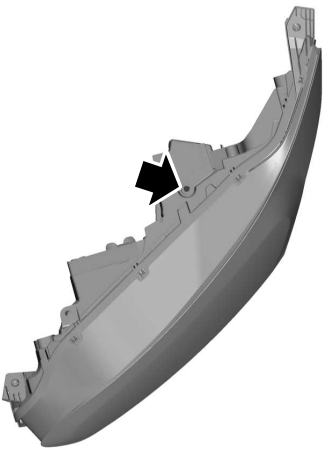
3. Switch on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the flat zone of high intensity light is not on the horizontal reference line, adjust the aim of the headlamp beam.



E164485

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or hexagonal socket, to turn the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

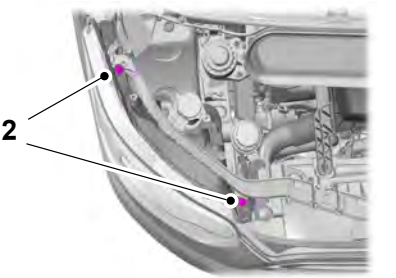
The horizontal aim of the headlamp beam on your vehicle is not adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

WARNING

Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

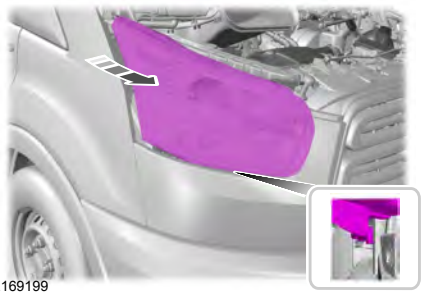
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 211).



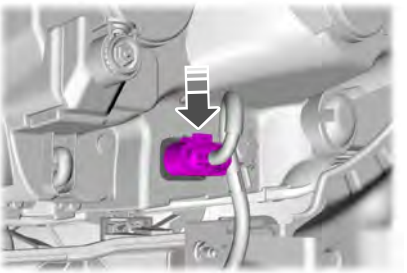
E169198

2. Remove the screws.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


E169199

3. Pull the headlamp toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from its locating points and then lift the headlamp up.


E169200

4. Disconnect the electrical connectors.

Note: *When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly attach the electrical connector.*

Note: *When you install the headlamp, make sure that you correctly engage its locating points.*

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS

Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNINGS

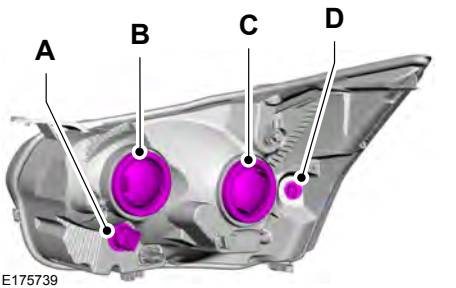
Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 236).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer.*

Headlamp

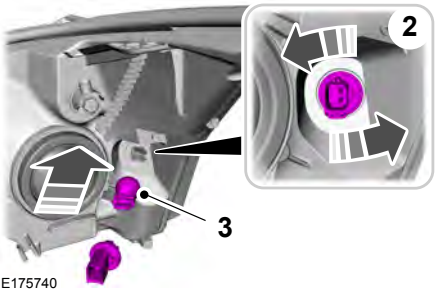


E175739

A	Parking lamp and direction indicator lamp.
B	Headlamp high beam.
C	Headlamp low beam and daytime running lamp.
D	Side marker lamp.

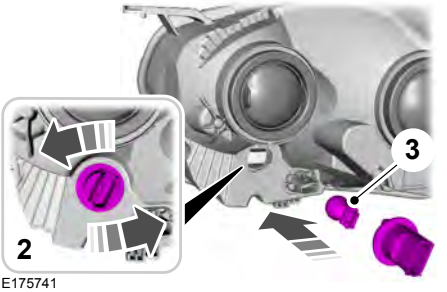
Note: *You may have to remove a cover to gain access to the bulb.*

Side Marker Lamp



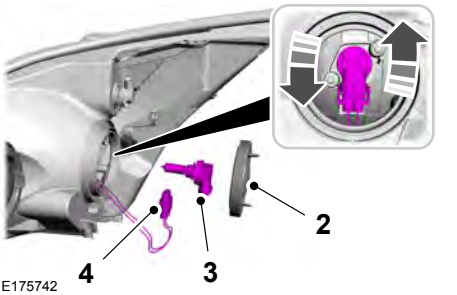
1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 230).
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Parking Lamp and Direction Indicator Lamp



1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 230).
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Headlamp Low Beam and Daytime Running Lamp

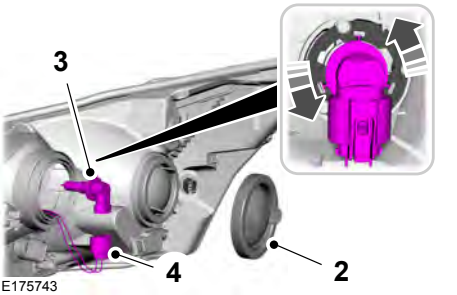


1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 230).
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Headlamp High Beam



1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 230).
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.

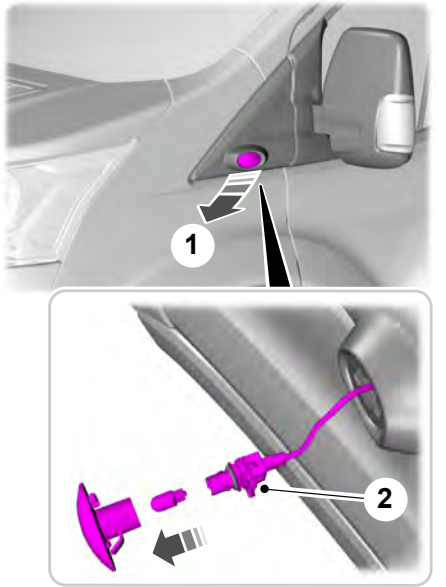
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

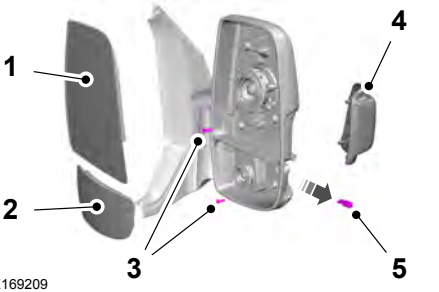
Front Clearance Lamp (If Equipped)



E181397

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

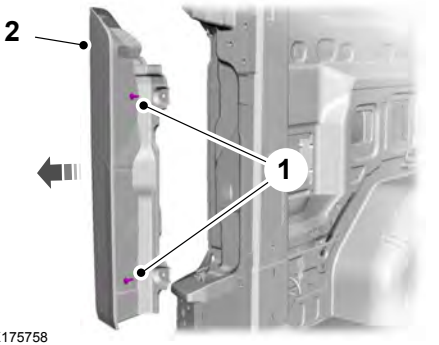
Side Direction Indicator (If Equipped)



E169209

1. Remove the large mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully up, pull the mirror glass toward you from the bottom.
2. Remove the small mirror glass. Tilt the mirror glass fully down, pull the mirror glass toward you from the top.
3. Remove the screws.
4. Remove the lamp lens.
5. Remove the bulb.

Rear Lamps



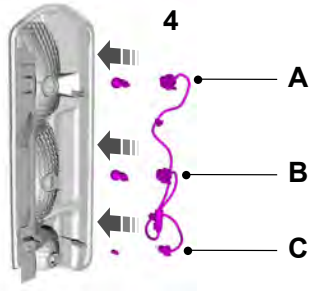
E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.



E175745

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



E175746

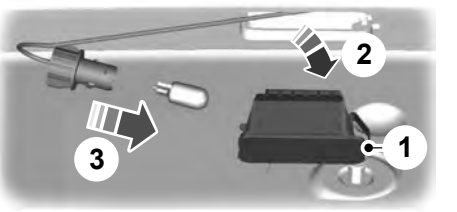
A Tail and brake lamp.
B Reversing lamp.
C Rear clearance lamp.

4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

This is not a serviceable item, see an authorized dealer if it fails.

License Plate Lamp

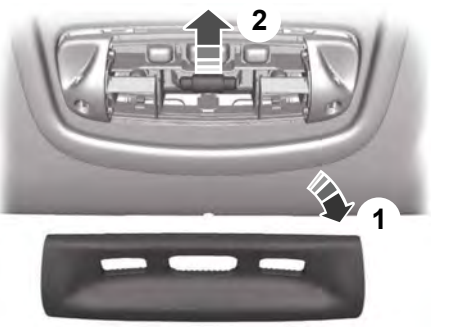


E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it. Pull the bulb straight out.

Interior Lamp

Vehicles with Interior Sensors



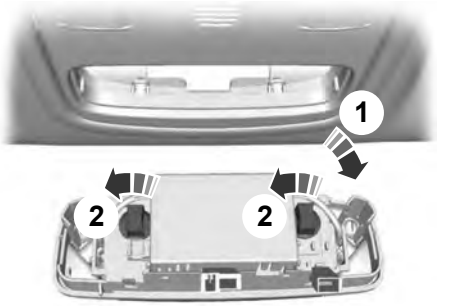
E154370

1. Carefully remove the lens.
2. Remove the bulb.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Reading Lamps

Vehicles with Interior Sensors



E72786

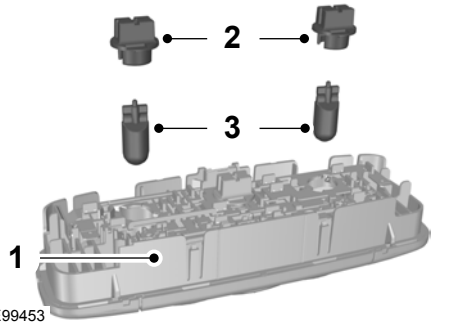
1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



E73939

3. Remove the bulb.

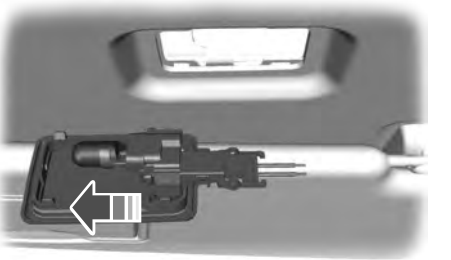
Vehicles without Interior Sensors



E99453

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Sun Visor Mirror Lamp



E72785

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side marker lamp.	168	5
Front I.D. lamp.	W5W	5
Headlamp low beam and Daytime running lamp.	H11	55
Headlamp high beam.	9005	60
Front direction indicator.	3457NAK	21
Side direction indicator.	W5W	5
Front clearance lamp (Exterior mirror).	W5W	5
Brake, rear and direction indicator lamp.	3057K	26/6
Rear clearance lamp.	168	5
Reversing lamp.	3057K	26
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

Note: *If your vehicle is fitted with LED lamps these are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front interior lamp.	W6W	6
Front interior lamp. Vehicles with category 1 alarm.	Festoon	6
Map lamp.	W6W	6
Side door entrance lamp.	211 Festoon	10
Luggage compartment lamp.	211 Festoon	10

Note: *If your vehicle is fitted with LED lamps these are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

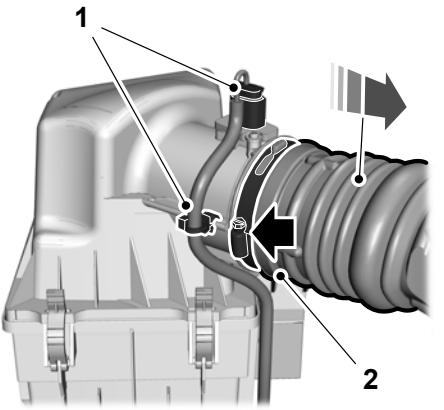
WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Only use the specified replacement air filter. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Change the air filter element at the correct interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).

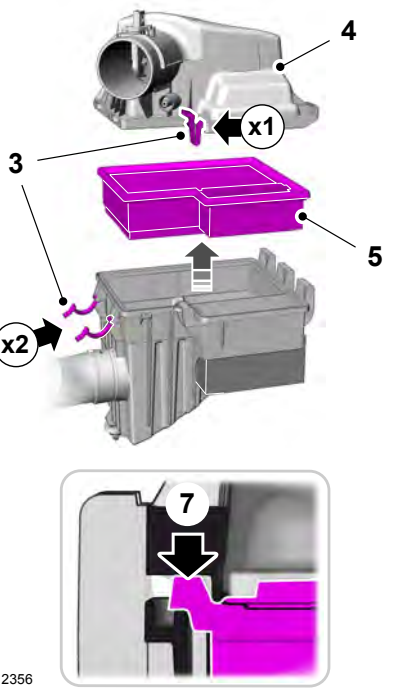


E211558

1. Disconnect the electrical connector from the sensor and the cable from the air filter cover.

Note: *Vehicles with 3.2L or 3.5L engine only.*

2. Clean the area around the air tube and air filter cover connection. Loosen the air tube clamp, it is not necessary to completely remove the clamp. Remove the air tube off from the air filter housing cover.



E212356

3. Remove the clips that secure the air filter housing cover.

Note: *To unlatch the molded clip (x1) on the air filter housing cover, push it backward.*

4. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

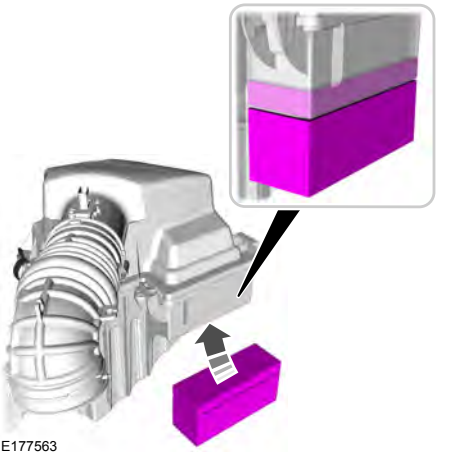
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.
7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.

Note: *Make sure the front clips are fully engaged and the molded clip on the air filter housing cover is fully pushed down and securely clicks into place.*

9. Install the air tube onto the air filter cover. Tighten the air tube clamp until you feel a strong resistance.
10. Reconnect the electrical connector to the sensor and the cable to the air filter cover.

Secondary Foam Air Filter (If Equipped)

If you operate your vehicle in heavy snow, we recommend that you clear any snow or ice from the secondary foam air filter every 200 mi (320 km). Do not permanently remove the secondary foam air filter.



E177563

The secondary foam air filter must be in place when the engine is running.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover *(U.S.)* Motorcraft Dissolvant de goudron et éliminateur d'insectes *(Canada)* ZC-42 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft Nettoyant pour métal brillant *(Canada)* ZC-15 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Detail Wash *(U.S.)* Shampooing superfin Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-3-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser Engine Shampoo and Degreaser ZC-20 *(U.S.)*	-
Engine Shampoo Motorcraft Shampooing pour moteur *(Canada)* CXC-66-A *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft Leather and Vinyl Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft Nettoyant pour cuir et vinyle de haute qualité *(Canada)* ZC-56 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Multi-Purpose Cleaner Motorcraft Nettoyant multi-usage *(Canada)* CXC-101 *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Professional Strength Carpet and Upholstery Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft Nettoyant professionnel pour sellerie et moquette *(Canada)* ZC-54 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover Spot and Stain Remover ZC-14 *(U.S.)*	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft Nettoie-vitres de qualité supérieure *(Canada)* ZC-23 *(U.S.)* CXC-100 *(Canada)*	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner *(U.S.)* Nettoyant pour roues et pneus Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-37-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	-

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Before using a car wash, check that it is suitable for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the blower motor off to prevent contamination of the cabin air filter.*

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean the chrome trim. Use soapy water.*

Use a soft clean cloth to dry the chrome trim.

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Body Paintwork Preservation

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Note: *Do not apply polish in strong sunlight as this dries the polish too quickly.*

Note: *Do not allow polish to come in contact with plastic surfaces as it can be difficult to remove.*

Note: *Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. A contaminated windshield or contaminated wiper blades may lead to increased wiper noise, reduced wipe quality or reduced rain sensor performance.*

Sliding Door Tracks (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not open or close the sliding doors when your hands are near the tracks or rollers.

To clean the sliding door tracks, wipe the surface using a clean, cotton cloth with a mild soap and water solution.

Do not use a commercial or high-pressure washer.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.*

Note: *We recommend distilled water when cleaning.*

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: *Avoid soaking any surface.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

WARNINGS

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.*

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not steam clean.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminates which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Notice to Utility Vehicle, Van and Truck Owners

WARNINGS

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires properly inflated, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts. Children and infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

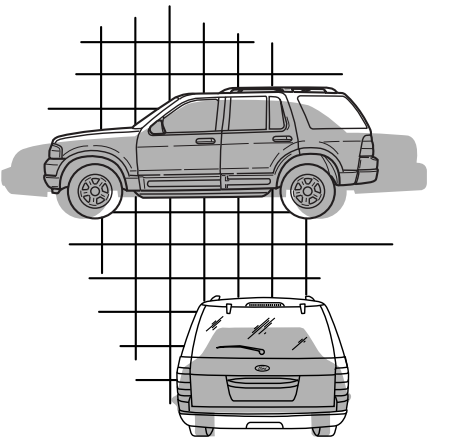


E145298

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

How Your Vehicle Differs from Other Vehicles

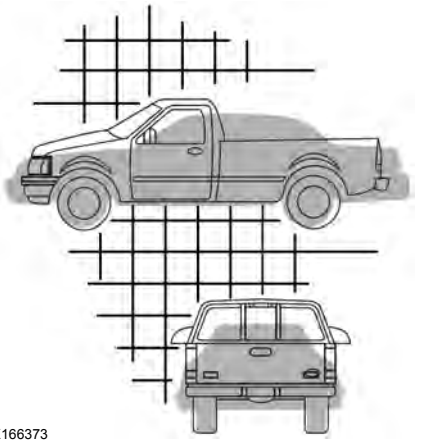
Sport-utility vehicles, vans and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



E166373

As a result of the above dimensional differences, sport-utility vehicles, vans and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

TIRE CARE

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grades



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 ©)(2).

Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

United States Department of Transportation Tire Quality Grades

The United States of America Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: for P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **bar** Metric unit of atmospheric pressure.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

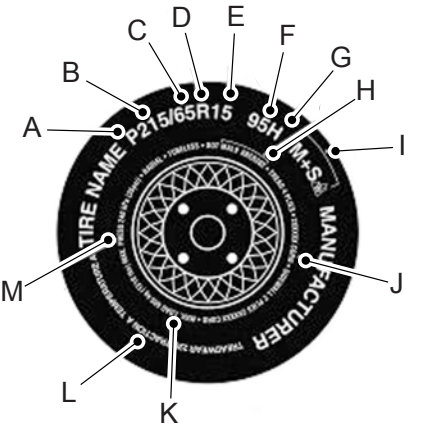
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

United States of America, and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a United States of America DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

P Type Tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below.

Note: *Tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from the following example.*



E142543

A **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

E **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change the wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in the Owner's Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

G **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 kph) to 186 mph (299 kph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

H **United States of America DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, **AT:** All Terrain, **AS:** All Season.

J **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

the driver door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

Tire speed ratings	
Letter rating	**mph (km/h)**
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

Note: *If the tire size does not begin with a letter, this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association). You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

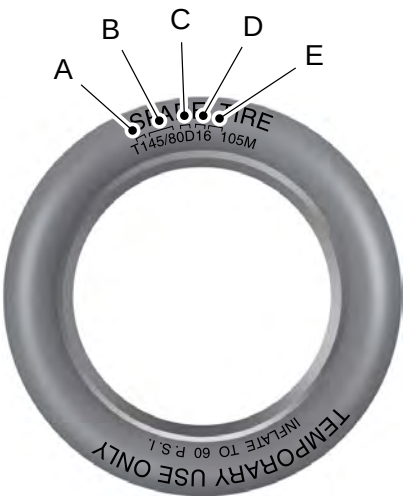
Note: *The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings, for example standard load, radial tubeless, etc.*

T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size. T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. The definitions of these items are listed below.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E142545

A **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

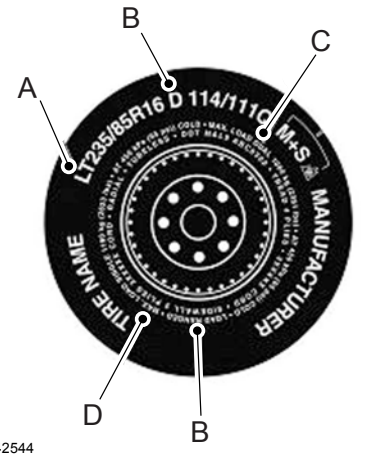
E **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change the wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Additional Information for LT Type Tires

LT235/85 R16 is an example of a tire size. LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. The definitions of these items are listed below.

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E142544

A **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

B **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Additional Information for ETRTO Euro-Metric Commercial Vehicle Tires

Euro-metric commercial vehicle tires end in the letter "C" (for example, 235/65R16**C**). The "C" does not signify the tire's Load Range like the T&RA LT tire dimension (for example, LT245/75R17**E**).

Tire Load Capacities are identified by the Single/Dual Load indexes that follow the tire size on the tire's sidewall (for example, 235/65R16C **121/119**).

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

United States of America DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

United States of America, and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a United States of America DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

Inflating the Tires

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat.

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that the tires are correctly inflated.

Every day before you drive, check the tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

At least once a month and before long trips inspect each tire including the spare tire. Check the tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge. Inflate all tires to the correct inflation pressure.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. We recommend the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate the tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles

Note: *Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of your vehicle. If you do not maintain the tire pressures as specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as shimmy. This will cause severe vibration and oscillations in the steering wheel when your vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road and is unable to dampen out by itself. Significantly under-inflated tires, incorrect tire usage or any vehicle modifications such as lift-kits can cause your vehicle to shimmy. If your vehicle begins to shimmy, slowly reduce the speed of your vehicle by pressing the brake pedal or releasing the accelerator pedal. As your vehicle speed reduces the shimmy will cease.*

The maximum inflation pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

of the driver door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 10 psi (0.7 bar) in inflation pressure. Check the tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the correct pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the tire pressures:

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.
2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the tire pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended tire pressure.
4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.
6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, for example you have driven more than 1.0 mi (1.6 km), never bleed or reduce tire pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for the tires, check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the tire pressure to increase as you drive.*

Note: *If you over inflate the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type mini-spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

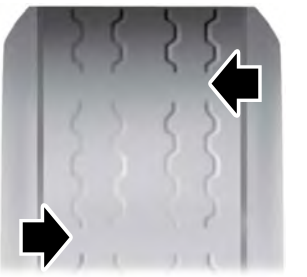
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Inspecting the Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects, for example stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire removed and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Incorrect or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all the tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to 0.08 in (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 0.08 in (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Tire Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, for example bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove or separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Tire Age

WARNINGS

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Tire Replacement Requirements

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type, (for example P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Your vehicle is fitted with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

We recommend that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

Note: *The wheel valve stems must also be replaced when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.*

Fitting Replacement Tires

WARNINGS

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

WARNINGS

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.

2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of the tire pressure monitoring system. If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. The replacement tire might be incompatible with the tire pressure monitoring system, or a component of the tire pressure monitoring system may be damaged. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Tire Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety:

- Observe posted speed limits.
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road.
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect a tire or your vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with the spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to the tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of the tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Tire Rotation

WARNING

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).

Rotating the tires at the recommended interval detailed in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter will help the tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

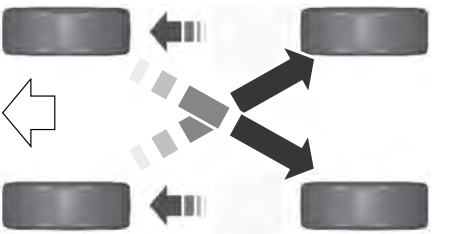
Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Note: *After rotating the tires the inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Note: *If the tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *Your vehicle may have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

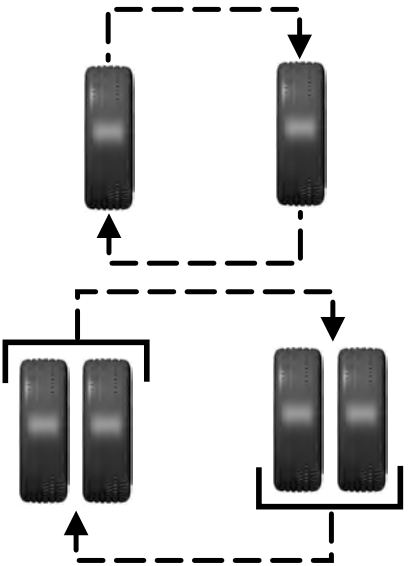
Rear-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles with single rear wheels (front tires at left of diagram).



E142548

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Rear-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles with dual rear wheels.



E166988

USING WINTER TIRES

WARNING

When you use winter tires on your vehicle, you must make sure that you use the correct lug nuts.

If winter tires are used, you must make sure that you use the correct tire pressures.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING

Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires or snow chains.

If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar) and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

If you use snow chains, we recommended that steel wheels of the same size and specifications are used, snow chains may damage aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow chains:

- Avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Only certain snow chains or cables have been approved by Ford as safe for use on vehicles with either 235/65 R16C or 195/75 R16C tires.
- Snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the rear tires only.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Install snow chains securely, make sure they do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- S class or 15mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of the tire.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Purchase snow chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels the body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed.
- Do not use snow chains on dry roads.
- If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, see an authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will illuminate if any of the tire pressures are significantly low. If the warning light is illuminated, one or more of the tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If one of the road wheels and tire needs to be replaced with the temporary spare wheel and tire, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire must be repaired and refitted to your vehicle.

To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. For additional information, see **Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System** in this section.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Inflating the tires** in this chapter.
		2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure See **Maintenance** (page 211). or the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes at over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and refit it to your vehicle to restore correct system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When the temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, you must retrain the system following every tire rotation. See **Tire Care** (page 248).
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and refit it to your vehicle to restore correct system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When the temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires (for example; at a gas station), the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

While driving in a normal manner, tire pressures may increase up to 4 psi (0.3 bar) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease up to 3 psi (0.2 bar) for a drop of 30ºF (17ºC) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value will be detected by the system as being significantly lower than the correct inflation pressure and the warning light will illuminate.

If the warning light is on:

- Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
- If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
- Check the tire pressures and Inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure after:

- Every tire rotation.
- Each tire replacement, only when the sensor stays the same and does not change.

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure will not work with a new sensor until an authorized dealer programs the new sensor.*

Overview

WARNING

To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

To maintain your vehicle's load carrying capability, this vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires. The system on your vehicle is designed to illuminate the warning light at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

System Reset Tips:

- To reduce the chance of interference from another vehicle, the system reset procedure should be carried out at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford vehicle undergoing the system reset procedure.
- Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will time-out and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels. A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

Read the entire procedure before carrying out a system reset.

1. Drive your vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least two minutes and then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to a tire inflation pump.
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Switch the ignition on with the engine off.
4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off three times, this must be completed within 10 seconds. If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will chirp once and the system indicator will flash. If this does not occur, repeat the procedure from step 2. If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not chirp and the system indicator does not flash, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
5. Train the system sensors in the tires using the following reset sequence starting with the left front tire and following a clockwise order: Left front, right front, right rear, left rear.
6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn chirps.

Note: *The single horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by your vehicle for this position. If a double horn chirp is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.*

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn chirps.
8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn chirps.
9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn chirps. Training is complete when the horn chirps after the last system sensor (left rear) has been trained and the system indicator stops flashing.
10. Switch the ignition off. If two short horn chirps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

Note: *If after repeating the procedure two short horn chirps are heard again, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

11. Set all four tires to the correct pressure See **Maintenance** (page 211). or the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS

The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.

If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the system sensors See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain replacement locking lug nuts or a locking lug nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

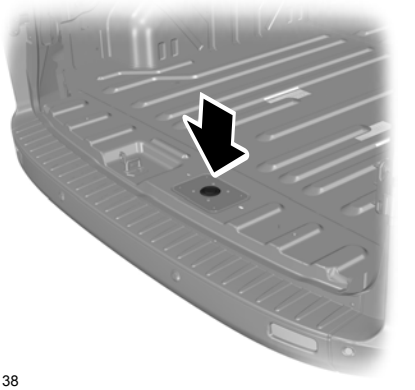
Van, Bus or Wagon

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

Note: *If your vehicle is fitted with a tire pressure monitoring system, the warning indicator will flash if you fit the spare wheel to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the tire pressure monitoring system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. See* ***Tire Pressure Monitoring System*** *(page 266). To prevent damage occurring to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors, make sure you have a damage tire repaired or replaced by a tire professional.*



E145138

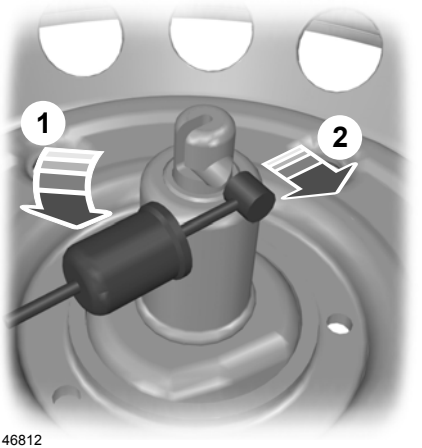
1. Open the rear doors. Remove the grommet and insert the flat end of the lug wrench into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



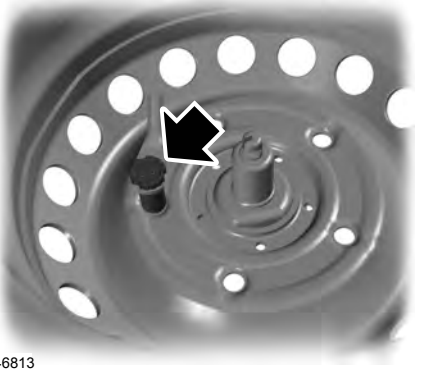
E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.

Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

Chassis Cab and Cutaway

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

Note: *If your vehicle is fitted with a tire pressure monitoring system, the warning indicator will flash if you fit the spare wheel to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the tire pressure monitoring system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. See* ***Tire Pressure Monitoring System*** *(page 266). To prevent damage occurring to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors, make sure you have a damage tire repaired or replaced by a tire professional.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



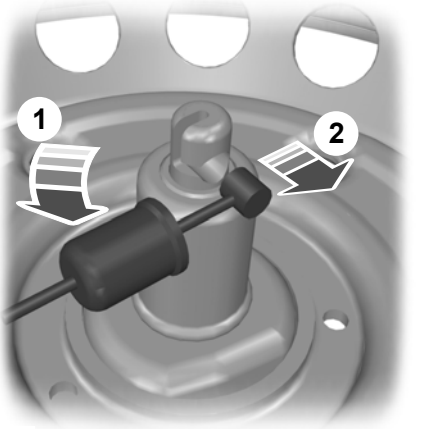
E184880

1. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench into the socket. Turn counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.



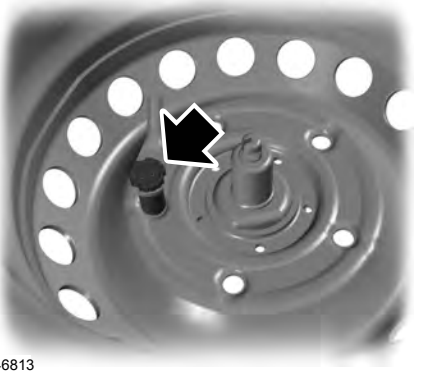
E146811

2. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.



E146813

4. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack.

To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P), set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

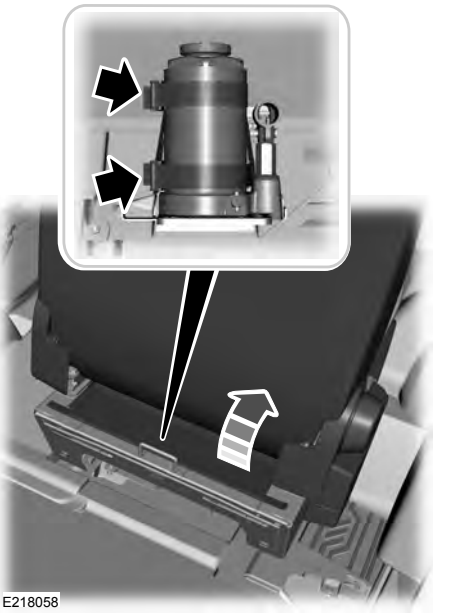
Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

Disable the power running boards before jacking, lifting, or placing any object under the vehicle. Never place your hand between the power running board and the vehicle as extended power running boards will retract when the doors are closed. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

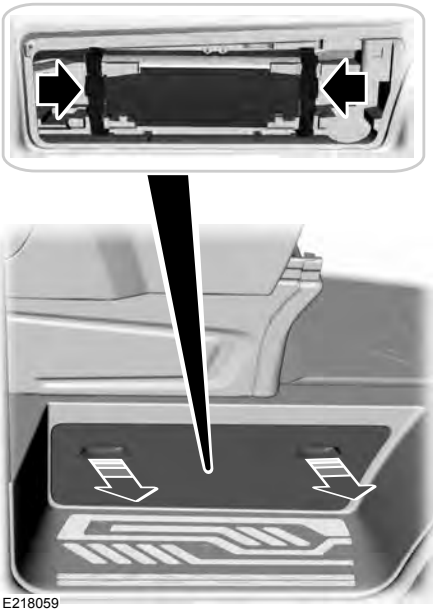
Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Note: *Vehicles with a Temporary Mobility Kit do not have a vehicle jack or a lug wrench.*

Vehicle Jack Storage



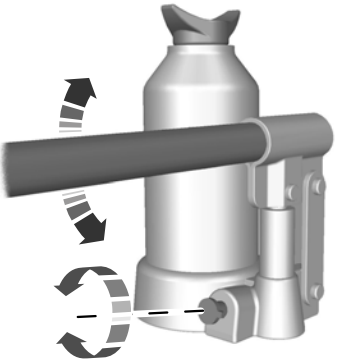
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E218059

The vehicle jack is under the passenger seat. The jack handle and lug wrench are located in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

Note: *The vehicle jack is in the load space area on vehicles with rear climate control.*



E70959

1. Assemble the jack handle.
2. Insert the jack handle onto the release valve and rotate clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
3. Insert the jack handle into the pump and use a pumping action to raise your vehicle.
4. Insert the jack handle into the release valve and rotate counterclockwise to lower your vehicle.

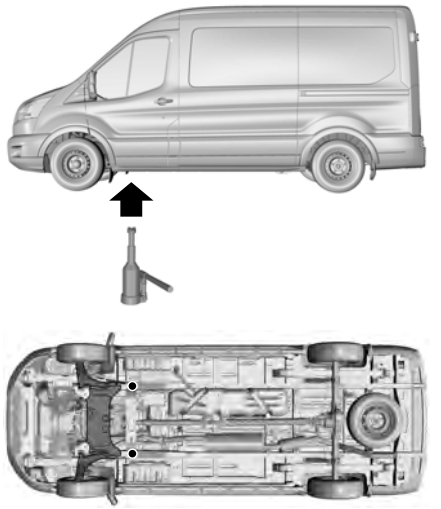
Front Jacking Points

WARNING

You must use the specified jacking points.

Note: *If your vehicle has rear air conditioning make sure the vehicle jack does not come in contact with the air conditioning lines.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



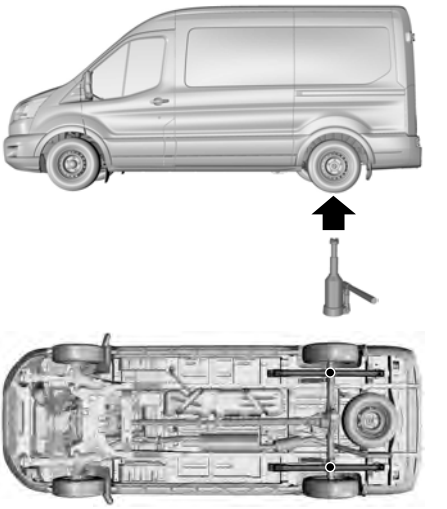
E171405

Position the head of the vehicle jack under the protrusions at the rear of front sub-frame.

Rear Jacking Points

WARNING

You must use the specified jacking points.



E171406

Position the head of the vehicle jack under the rear axle.

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

Chock the diagonally opposite wheel to the punctured tire with an appropriate block or wheel chock. A wheel chock may be located in the B-pillar or in a storage compartment in the front right-hand side stepwell.

Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare tire with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction have the tire refitted as soon as possible.

1. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench between the wheel rim and the wheel trim and carefully remove the wheel trim.
2. Use the locking lug nut key to loosen the locking lug nut.
3. Loosen the remaining lug nuts, but do not remove them.
4. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Note: *Do not lay alloy road wheels face down on the ground.*

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other wheel and tire sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

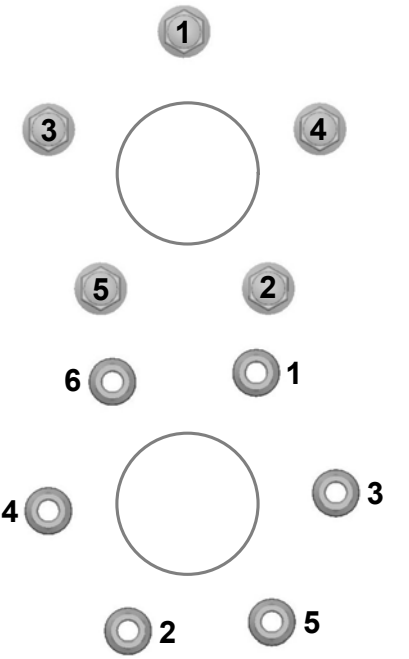
Make sure there is no lubrication (grease or oil) on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNINGS

Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign material.

Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or mounting system. This damage could allow the wheels to come off when your vehicle is moving.

1. Install the wheel.



E70961

2. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

4. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Install the wheel trim.

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

Note: *Alloy wheel lug nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.*

Note: *If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel replace it as soon as possible.*

Note: *Check the lug nuts for correct tightness and check the tire pressure as soon as possible.*

Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack

Note: *Do not raise the spare wheel bracket without a wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if the spare wheel bracket is lowered without a wheel attached.*

1. Attach the spare wheel bracket to the wheel using the retaining nut.
2. Slide the cable through the slot and attach the spare wheel bracket to the winch.
3. Rotate the cable through 90 degrees and lower the cable end cover.
4. Insert the flat end of the lug wrench into the socket. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance. Make sure the wheel is secure.
5. Stow the vehicle jack, jack handle and lug wrench in their correct locations and secure them with the straps.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M14 x 1.5	148 lb.ft (200 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance, for example tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

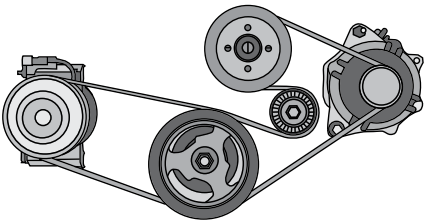
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

Engine	3.5L V6 Ecoboost
Cubic inches	214
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.030-.033 in. (.75-.85 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1

Drivebelt Routing

3.5L V6 Ecoboost Engines with A/C



E167467

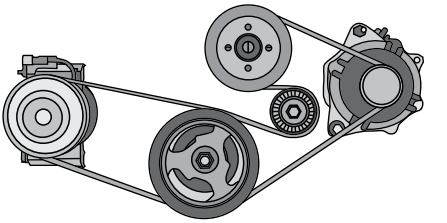
ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.7L

Engine	3.7 V6
Cubic inches	226
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.049-.053 in. (1.25-1.35 mm)
Compression ratio	10.5:1

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Drivebelt Routing

3.7L V6 Engines with A/C

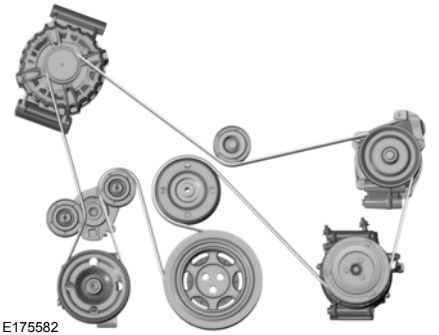

E167464

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL

Engine	3.2L Power Stroke Diesel
Cubic inches	195
Required fuel	No. 2 Diesel
Firing order	1-2-4-5-3
Compression ratio	15.4:1

Drivebelt Routing

3.2L Power Stroke Diesel Engines with A/C


E175582

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

3.5L V6 Ecoboost

Component	Part number
Air filter element	FA-1916
Automatic transmission fluid filter	FT-161
Battery	BXT-48H6-610
Oil filter	FL-500S
Spark plugs	SP-534
Windshield wiper blades - roof med-low	WW-2955 - driver side WW-2112 - passenger side
Windshield wiper blades - roof low, medium & high	WW-2901 - driver side WW-2049 - passenger side

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 430).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 3.7L

3.7L Duratec

Component	Part number
Air filter element	FA-1916
Automatic transmission fluid filter	FT-161
Battery	BXT-48H6-610
Oil filter	FL-500S
Spark plugs	SP-520
Windshield wiper blades - roof med-low	WW-2955 - driver side WW-2112 - passenger side
Windshield wiper blades - roof low, medium & high	WW-2901 - driver side WW-2049 - passenger side

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 430).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL

3.2L Power Stroke Diesel

Component	Part number
Diesel Foam Pre air filter.	FA-1921
Air filter element.	FA-1916
Automatic transmission fluid filter.	FT-161
Battery (dual battery).	BAGM-48H6-760
Oil filter.	FL-500S
Fuel filter.	FG-1148
Windshield wiper blades - roof med-low.	WW-2955 - driver side WW-2112 - passenger side
Windshield wiper blades - roof low, medium & high.	WW-2901 - driver side WW-2049 - passenger side

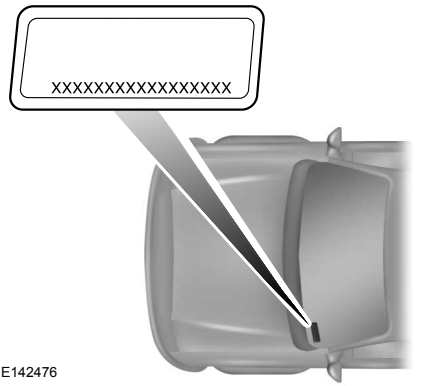
Note: *Motorcraft replacement parts are recommended for scheduled maintenance and are available at an authorized dealer or at fordparts.com. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your vehicle Warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.*

Note: *Should a Motorcraft oil filter not be available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

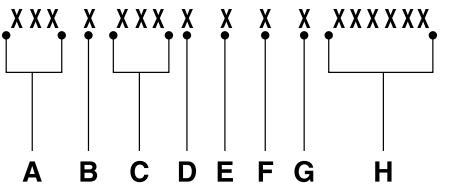
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:

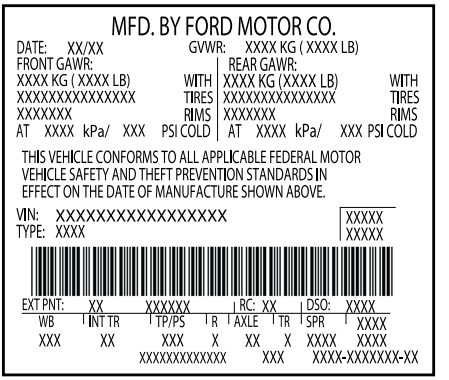


E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

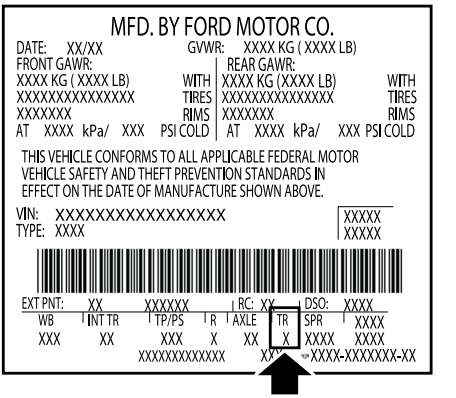
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission 6R80E	6

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	5.9 qt (5.6 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	5.4 qt (5.1 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	16.4 qt (15.5 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles without an auxiliary heater.	14.9 qt (14.1 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. [1]	13.1 qt (12.4 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity, vehicles with limited slip differential. [2]	2.9 qt (2.72 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity, vehicles with conventional differential.	3.0 qt (2.84 L)
Rear axle friction modifier	4.0 fl oz (118 ml)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	25.1 gal (95 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	4.8 qt (4.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity, vehicles with rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	2.62 lb (1.19 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity, vehicles without rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	1.76 lb (0.8 kg)

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Capacity
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity, vehicles with rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	9.5 fl oz (280 ml)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity, vehicles without rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	5.4 fl oz (160 ml)

[1] Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).

[2] For complete refill of limited slip differential, add 4.0 fl oz. (118 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A.

Note: *Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.*

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1.0 qt (0.9 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

We recommend that you use Motorcraft oil and fluids for your vehicle. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Huile moteur synthétique Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W30-QFS *(U.S.)* CXO-5W30-LFS12 *(Canada)*	WSS-M2C946-A
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant *(U.S.)* Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® *(Canada)* VC-3DIL-B *(U.S.)* CVC-3DIL-B *(Canada)*	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid *(U.S.)* Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* PM-20 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-10-QLVC *(U.S.)* CXT-10-LV12 *(Canada)*	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant *(U.S.)* Huile synthétique de haute qualité pour engrenage hypoïde SAE 75W-85 *(Canada)* XY-75W85-QL *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C942-A
Motorcraft® Additive Friction Modifier *(U.S. & Canada)* XL-3 *(U.S.)* CXL-3 *(Canada)*	EST-M2C118-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant *(U.S.)* Frigorigène R-134a Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-19 *(U.S.)* CYN-16-R *(Canada)*	WSH-M17B19-A
Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil *(U.S.)* Huile PAG pour compresseur frigorifique Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-12-D *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSH-M1C231-B
Premium Long-Life Grease *(U.S. & Canada)* XG-1-E1 *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESA-M1C75-B

Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® LV transmission fluid.*



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specifications defined by WSS-M2C946-A, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that meets API SN requirements and displays the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Note: *Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 3.7L

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	6 qt (5.7 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	5.5 qt (5.2 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	16.4 qt (15.5 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles without an auxiliary heater.	14.9 qt (14.1 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. [1]	13.1 qt (12.4 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity (limited slip differential). [2]	2.9 qt (2.72 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity (conventional differential).	3.0 qt (2.84 L)
Rear axle friction modifier.	4.0 fl oz (118 ml)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	25.1 gal (95 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	4.8 qt (4.5 L)

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Capacity
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity.	2.45 lb (1.11 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity.	9.5 fl oz (280 ml)

[1] Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).

[2] For complete refill of limited slip differential, add 4.0 fl oz. (118 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A.

Note: *Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.*

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1.0 qt (0.9 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

We recommend that you use Motorcraft oil and fluids for your vehicle. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Huile moteur synthétique SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W20-QFS *(U.S.)* CXO-5W20-LFS12 *(Canada)*	WSS-M2C945-A
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant *(U.S.)* Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® *(Canada)* VC-3DIL-B *(U.S.)* CVC-3DIL-B *(Canada)*	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid *(U.S.)* Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* PM-20 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-10-QLVC *(U.S.)* CXT-10-LV12 *(Canada)*	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant *(U.S.)*	WSS-M2C942-A

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Name	Specification
Huile synthétique de haute qualité pour engrenage hypoïde SAE 75W-85 *(Canada)* XY-75W85-QL *(U.S. & Canada)*	
Motorcraft® Additive Friction Modifier *(U.S. & Canada)* XL-3 *(U.S.)* CXL-3 *(Canada)*	EST-M2C118-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant *(U.S.)* Frigorigène R-134a Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-19 *(U.S.)* CYN-16-R *(Canada)*	WSH-M17B19-A
Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil *(U.S.)* Huile PAG pour compresseur frigorifique Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-12-D *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSH-M1C231-B
Premium Long-Life Grease *(U.S. & Canada)* XG-1-E1 *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESA-M1C75-B

Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® LV transmission fluid.*



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specifications defined by WSS-M2C945-A, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W20 engine oil that meets API SN requirements and displays the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Note: *Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 3.2L POWER STROKE DIESEL

WARNING


The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	12.0 qt (11.4 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	11.6 qt (11 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	15.3 qt (14.5 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity, vehicles without an auxiliary heater.	13.9 qt (13.2 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. [1]	13.1 qt (12.4 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity, vehicles with limited slip differential. [2]	2.9 qt (2.72 L)
Rear axle fluid fill capacity, vehicles with conventional differential.	3.0 qt (2.84 L)
Rear axle friction modifier.	4.0 fl oz (118 ml)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	25.1 gal (95 L)
Diesel exhaust fluid fill capacity.	5.5 gal (21 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	4.8 qt (4.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity, vehicles with rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	2.45 lb (1.11 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity, vehicles without rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	1.76 lb (0.8 kg)

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Capacity
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity, vehicles with rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	9.5 fl oz (280 ml)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity, vehicles without rear heating, ventilation and air conditioning	5.4 fl oz (160 ml)

[1] Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 427).

[2] For complete refill of limited slip differential, add 4.0 fl oz. (118 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A.

Note: *Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.*

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
2.6 qt (2.5 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

We recommend that you use Motorcraft oil and fluids for your vehicle. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-40 Full Synthetic Diesel Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® SAE 5W-40 Huile synthétique pour moteur diesel *(Canada)* XO-5W40-5QSD *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C171-E
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant *(U.S.)* Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® *(Canada)* VC-3DIL-B *(U.S.)* CVC-3DIL-B *(Canada)*	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid *(U.S.)* Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* PM-20 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-10-QLVC *(U.S.)* CXT-10-LV12 *(Canada)*	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant *(U.S.)* Huile synthétique de haute qualité pour engrenage hypoïde SAE 75W-85 *(Canada)* XY-75W85-QL *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C942-A
Motorcraft® Additive Friction Modifier *(U.S. & Canada)* XL-3 *(U.S.)* CXL-3 *(Canada)*	EST-M2C118-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant *(U.S.)* Frigorigène R-134a Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-19 *(U.S.)* CYN-16-R *(Canada)*	WSH-M17B19-A
Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil *(U.S.)* Huile PAG pour compresseur frigorifique Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-12-D *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSH-M1C231-B
Premium Long-Life Grease *(U.S. & Canada)* XG-1-E1 *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESA-M1C75-B

Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for diesel engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® LV transmission fluid.*



E179966

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C171-E, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-40 engine oil that meets API SN requirements and displays the API Certification Mark for diesel engines.

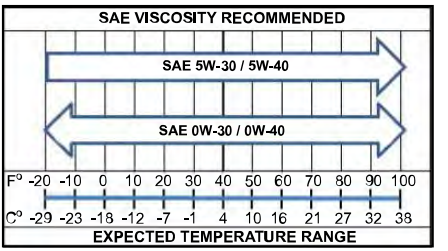
Note: *Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Alternative Oil Viscosity



E176394

The use of correct oil viscosities is important for satisfactory operation. Determine which oil viscosity best suits the temperature range you expect to encounter for the next service interval from the SAE viscosity grade chart.

Note: *For the use of biodiesel fuel (B6 – B20), use SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

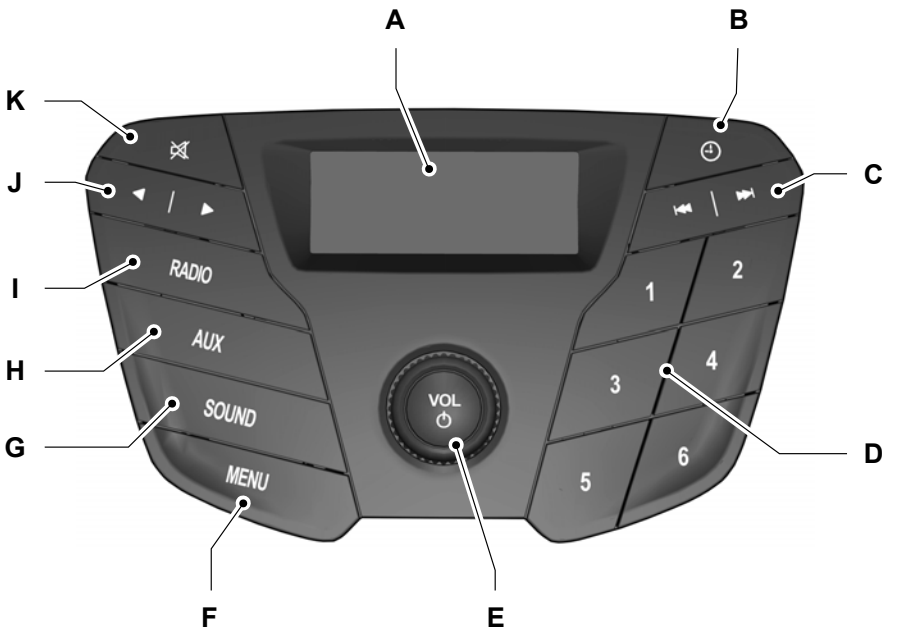
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E175058

A **Display:** Shows the status of the current mode selected.

B **Clock:** Press to display the clock.

C **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In media mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold either button to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

D **Numeric keypad:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

E **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

F **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features.

G **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

H **AUX:** Press to access the auxiliary features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

I **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

J **Arrow left and right:** Press to scroll through the menu choices.

K **Mute:** Press to mute the sound.

Clock Button

This allows you to adjust the clock settings.

Press the Clock button until the following message is displayed.

Message	Action and Description
Set Hour	Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to set the correct hour.
Press the **Clock** button again until the following message is displayed.	
Set Minutes	Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to set the correct minutes.

Setting 24 Hour or 12 Hour Display

Press the Menu button until the following message is displayed.

Message	Action and Description
24 Hour	Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to select one of the following: 12 Hour 24 Hour

Note: *The default setting is 24 hour.*

Station Tuning Buttons

Seek Tuning

Select a frequency band and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

Manual Tuning

Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to tune up or down the frequency band in small increments. To increment quickly, press and hold until you find a station you want to listen to.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations. They can be recalled by selecting the appropriate frequency band and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a frequency band.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each frequency band and for each preset button.

Menu Button

This allows you to adjust all of the audio system settings. Press the button repeatedly until the required setting is displayed. Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to adjust the following settings:

- Clock hour.
- Clock minutes.
- 24 hour, 12 hour.
- Bass.
- Treble.
- Balance.
- Fade.
- RDS.

Sound Button

This allows you to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, balance or fade.

1. Press the sound button until the required setting is displayed.
2. Use the cursor up or down arrow buttons to select the required level.

Note: *Fade settings are only adjustable if there are speakers in the rear of your vehicle.*

AUX Button

Connect your media device to the audio unit. See **USB Port** (page 313).

Select your media device as the audio source by pressing the **AUX** button. After connecting your media device, the first track will start to play automatically.

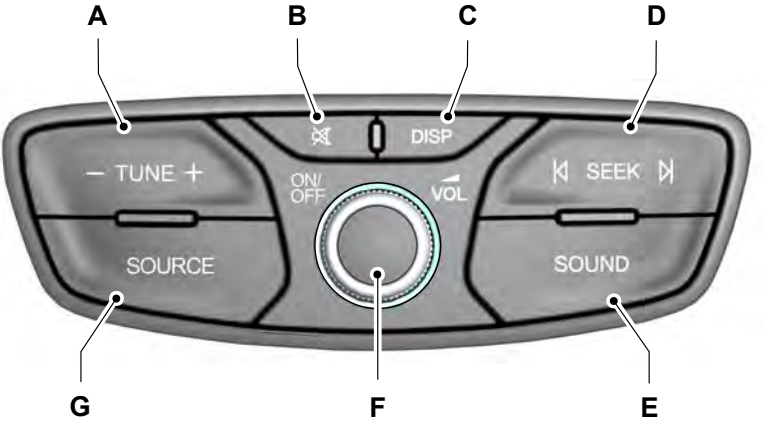
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E177140

A **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band. In SIRIUS mode, press to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

B **Mute:** Press to mute the sound.

C **DISP:** Press to switch the display screen on and off.

D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In media mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold either button to move quickly forward or backward through the current track. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as Jazz, Rock or News), use this button to find the next or previous in the selected category.

E **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

F **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

G **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, such as AM, FM, Satellite Radio and Line in.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

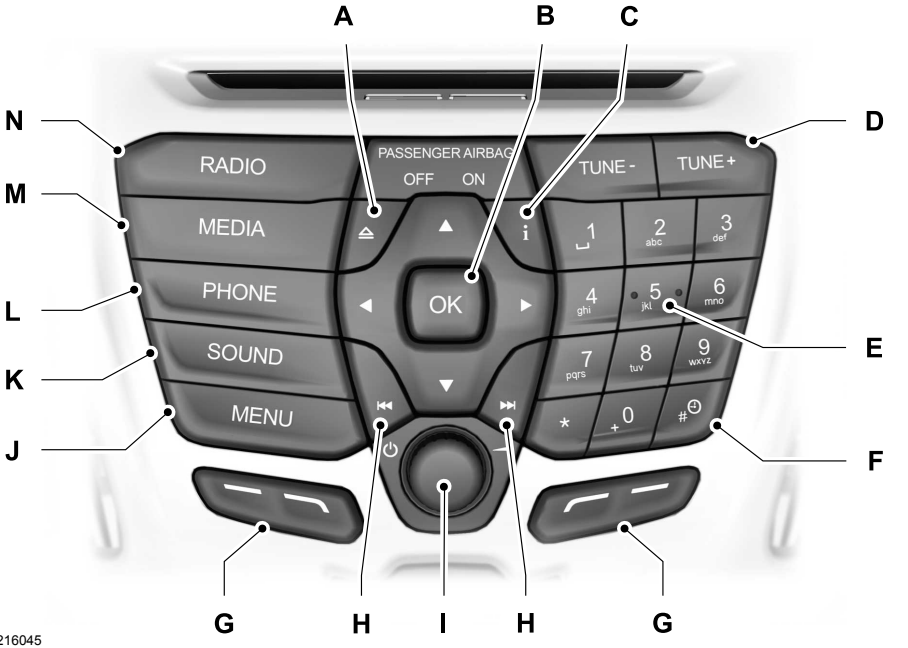
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch the ignition off. Press the on and off control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*



Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

B **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

C **Information:** Press to access any available radio or CD information.

D **TUNE:** Press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

F **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

G **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

H **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In media mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold either button to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

I **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

J **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

K **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

L **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

M **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

N **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

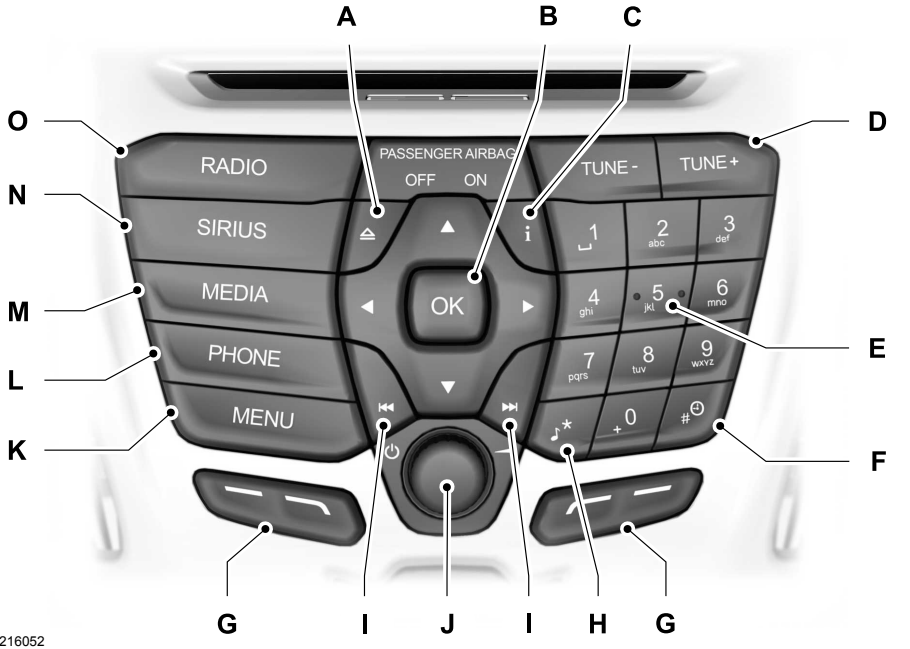
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/SATELLITE RADIO

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch the ignition off. Press the on and off control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*

Note: *Some features, such as SIRIUS satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*



Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

B **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

C **Information:** Press to access any available radio or CD information.

D **TUNE:** Press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

F **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

G **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

H **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

I **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In media mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold either button to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

J **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

K **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

L **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

M **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

N **SIRIUS:** Press to listen to SIRIUS satellite radio.

O **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

DIGITAL RADIO

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

	Potential reception issues
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or **Direct Tune**.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when **Scan** is pressed.	Pressing **Scan** disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

SATELLITE RADIO (If Equipped)

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential satellite radio reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

E208625

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, tune to channel 0.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Troubleshooting

Message	Condition	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found Check Channel Guide	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

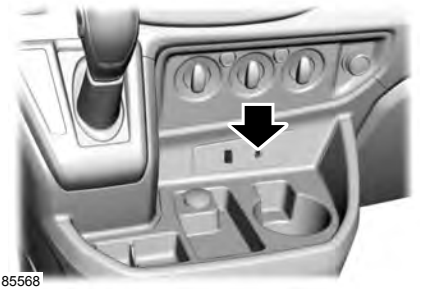
AUDIO INPUT JACK (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location when your vehicle is moving, for example the glove compartment. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.


E185568

The audio input jack allows you to connect and play music from a portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. The audio extension cable must have a 0.14 in (3.5 mm) male connector at each end. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

1. Make sure your vehicle is stationary with the audio unit and the portable music player switched off.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the audio input jack.
3. Switch the audio unit on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch the portable music player on and adjust the volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press the **AUX** button on the audio unit. You should hear music from the portable music player even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on the portable music player as desired. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

USB PORT

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

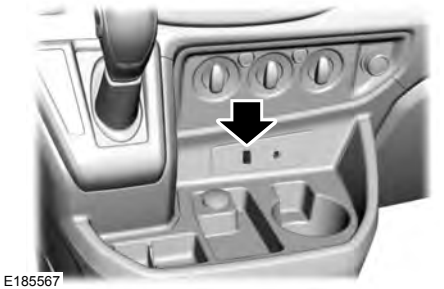
Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNINGS

against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your device while your vehicle is moving.

Store all devices in a secure location when your vehicle is moving, for example the glove compartment. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



E185567

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **General Information** (page 315). The extension cable must be long enough to allow the device to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



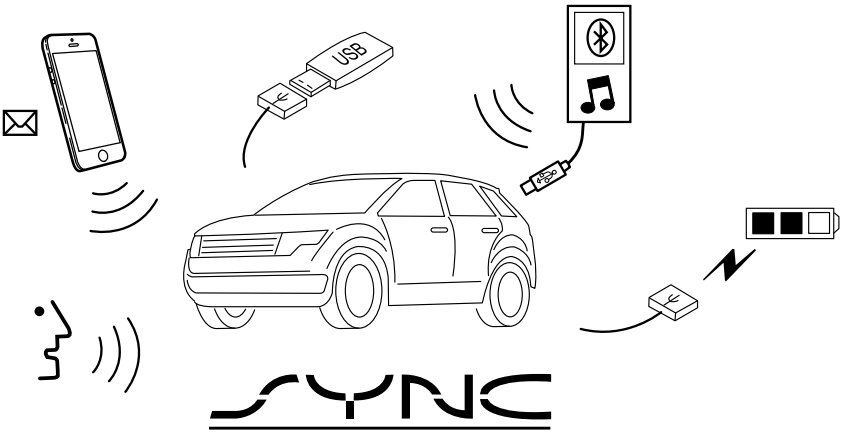
E201595

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist and applications, such as Spotify and Glympse, via SYNC AppLink.*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mi (5 km).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 331).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is around you.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
(cancel | exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
(main menu | start again)	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (cancel | exit) appears you say; cancel or exit.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

Confirmation Prompts

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request.

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
confirmation prompts off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then any of the following:	
phone confirmation on	When enabled, this feature will prompt you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to the call being placed.
phone confirmation off	The system will make a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

Changing the Voice Settings

In addition to using voice commands to change the voice settings, you can also use the menu in the audio display.

To change the voice settings press the Menu button then select:

Menu Item
SYNC-Settings
Voice settings

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 4000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Using the Audio System

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates there is no paired phone, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device | phone | Bluetooth audio) | add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth Devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button. When prompted, say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone)	
Then say any of the following:	
call (___)	
call ___ at home	
call ___ ((in|at) [the] office | at work)	
call ___ on (cell | mobile)	
call ___ on other	
dial [[a] number]	1
([go to] privacy | transfer to phone | privacy on)	2
(hold call [on] | place call on hold)	2
join (calls | call)	2
mute call [on]	2
(mute call off | un-mute call)	2
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)	
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message) [3]
help

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Home".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Commands
411 (four-one-one), 911 (nine-one-one)
700 (seven hundred)
800 (eight hundred)
900 (nine hundred)
Clear (deletes all entered digits)
Delete (deletes last set of digits entered)
Number <0-9>
Plus
Pound (#)
Star (*)

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press any button on the audio system.*

To access text messages say:

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message)
Then say any of the following:
(listen to | read) ([text] message)
forward (text | [text] message)
reply to (text | [text] message)
call [sender]

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Changing Devices Using Voice Commands

Using SYNC, you can easily access multiple phones, ipods, or USB devices. to switch devices say:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command	
(connect | device) ___	You can state the name of the desired device, such as "My iPhone","My Galaxy" or"My iPod". SYNC may ask you to confirm the type of device (Phone, USB, or Bluetooth Audio).

Making Calls



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	
call [[a] name]	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it. You can then say:

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(dial | send)	This initiates the call.
(delete | correct)	This erases the spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display.

Receiving Calls

Accepting calls

When receiving a call, you can answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to accept a call select:

Menu Item
Accept

Rejecting Calls

When receiving a call, you can reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to reject a call select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, such as putting a call on hold or joining calls.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select **More** to choose from the following options:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
Mic. off	Switch your vehicle's microphone off. To switch the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad (for example, numbers for passwords).
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty or conference call. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the **More** option. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired contact appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for call history and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages, as well as access phone and system settings.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Display	Description and action
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to access an alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select incoming, outgoing or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select 1 of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and then press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system's numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your phone.

Text Messaging

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3.1 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Description and action
(listen to | read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action		
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.		
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:		
	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:	
		Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.
		Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
		Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, and then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
New	Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and, in addition, provides the option to have the system read the message to you. To go to the next message, select the **More** option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cellular phone). The audio display indicates when the system has deleted all your text messages.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cellular phone.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Sending a Text Message

Note: *You can only send a text message to one recipient at a time.*

1. Select the send option when the desired selection highlights in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears.
3. Press the OK button again to confirm when the system asks if you want to send the message. A pre-defined signature appears on each text message.

Note: *You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.*

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone and text message notification, modify your phonebook, and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system uses the cellular phone as the master when there is more than one cellular phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all cellular phones (not only the active phone) using the Bluetooth Devices menu.
Phone status	See the cellular phone name, provider name, cellular phone number, and signal level. When done, press the left arrow buttons to return to the phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's tones or your cellular phone's). If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cellular phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select a ringtone.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to switch the audible tone off or on.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook (such as add, delete or download). Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the choices in the phonebook preferences table below.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Phonebook preferences	
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cellular phone. See your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.	
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.	
Download now	Press the OK button to select and download your phonebook to the system.	
Auto-download	When automatic download is on, the system deletes any changes (additions or deletions) saved in the system since your last download.	
	When automatic download is off, the system does not download your phonebook when your cellular phone connects to SYNC.	
	You can only access your phonebook, call history and text messages when your paired cellular phone connects to the system. Check or uncheck this option to download your phonebook automatically each time your phone connects to the system. Download times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.	
Sorting Pref.	Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select:	
	First/Last name	Last/First name

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as set a phone as primary.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Add	Pair additional phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
	2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone. See your phone's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Skip the next step. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the phone as primary appears, select either yes or no. 5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.
Delete	Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a phone from the list, you have to repeat the pairing process to pair it again.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cellular phone each time you switch on the ignition. When you select a cellular phone as primary, it appears first in the list, marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired phone as master by selecting the master option and confirming it as the primary.
Conn.	Connect a previously connected phone. You can only have one phone connected at a time to use the phone's functionality. When you connect another phone, the previous phone disconnects from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cellular phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cellular phone. Select this option and confirm when asked. After disconnecting a phone, you can reconnect it again without repeating the full pairing process.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, and then press the **OK** button.

Scroll to select from the following options:

Display	Description and action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to switch the system's Bluetooth interface off or on. Select this option, and then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	Return to the factory default settings without erasing your indexed information (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored in the system (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to factory default settings.
Install on SYNC	Install downloaded applications or software updates. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 317).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrow buttons to enter or leave a folder. You can select media content for playback from this menu.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- SYNC AppLink: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications such as Spotify and Glympse (if your phone is compatible).

These features may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user switches 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off, either a voice message plays or a display message or an icon comes on when your vehicle is started and after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 37). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 183). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Setting 911 Assist On or Off

Press Menu then select

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Applications	
911 Assist	Select desired option, on or off.

If you choose not to activate this feature you will have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Voice Reminder ON	Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
Voice Reminder OFF	Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel".

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

SYNC Mobile Apps

The system enables voice and steering wheel control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Availability of SYNC AppLink enabled Apps will vary by region.

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps work automatically with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *AppLink is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFordTouch system.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the menu on-screen. Then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll through the list of available applications and select a particular app or select:
	Find New Apps

Note: *If you cannot find a compatible SYNC AppLink app, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Accessing an App's Menu

When an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button on the steering wheel control to access the app menu.

You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down.

Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel control to exit the app menu.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button then when prompted say:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. When an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example "Play Playlist Road Trip".
help	Use this command to discover the available voice commands.

SYNC Mobile App Voice Commands

The following voice commands are always available:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	SYNC prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	SYNC lists all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	Searches your connected mobile device for SYNC-compatible mobile apps.
help	
You can say the name of a mobile app at any time to start the mobile app on SYNC.	

App Permissions

App permissions are organized by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app such as, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel economy, fuel consumption, engine speed, rain sensor, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, and head lamp status.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information such as, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine revolutions per minute, gear position, braking events, steering wheel angle, and accelerator pedal position.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state. Push notifications may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Note: *You only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

Enabling and Disabling App Permissions Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the SYNC menu then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
All Apps	You can also select a specific app. If the app supports push notifications, this setting is listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

There are three possible statuses:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Update Needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-To-Date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Update settings

Menu Item	Action and Description
Request Update	Select this option from the settings menu to manually preform a needed update.
Disable Updates	Select this option from the settings menu to disable automatic updates. Doing so also disables the use of Mobile Apps on SYNC.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artist and album.

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 15,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod, Zune, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display.

To view USB content select:

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the selected source starts to playback audio automatically.

You can browse the files on the USB device in categories. Select BROWSE from the buttons at the bottom of the audio display and choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists

Message
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; (what's | what is) playing, you must say either "what's playing" or "what is playing".

Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ___	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ___	
play [genre] ___	
play [playlist] ___	
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the next track on the current media.
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	Creates a playlist with a similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song | track | title | file] ___	
repeat off	
repeat (one | track) [on]	Repeats the current track.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Command	Description and Action
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current playlist in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth Audio on, press the MEDIA button and select:

Menu Item
BT audio

Then any of the following:

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat), find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display to start USB playback.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist or track.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

If there are media files, you have the following options:

Display	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your device one at a time in numerical order.* Press the **OK** button to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats like ASX, M3U, WPL, or MTP).* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press the **OK** button.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press the **OK** button.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. The system then lists and plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press the **OK** button.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by album.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired album, and then press the **OK** button.
Genres	Sort all indexed media files by genre (category) type.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press the **OK** button.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC. (Other files are not visible.) 1. Press the **OK** button to select.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Display	Description and Action
	2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on the device, and then press the **OK** button.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

*You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:

Accessing and Viewing USB Media
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)
(browse | search | show) album ___
(browse | search | show) artist ___
(browse | search | show) genre ___
(browse | search | show) playlist ___

USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

You can access both USB devices by using voice commands.

To access a USB device press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
USB 1
USB 2

Note: *SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.*

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 319).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(music | audio | entertainment) [system]
Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
Bluetooth (audio | stereo)
(disc | CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] FM 2
Radio
tune [to] SAT *
Sirius *
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)
help

* If equipped.

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
Radio
You can then say any of the following commands.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
[tune [to]] (AM ___ | ___ [AM])
[tune [to]] AM preset ___
[tune [to]] AM1 preset ___
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset) preset ___

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ___ | ___ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM preset ___
FM ___ HD ___ *
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ___
HD ___ *
[tune [to]] preset ___
Tune
help

* If equipped.

Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands (If equipped)



To listen to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Commands
Sirius

When you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, you can press the voice button, and say any of the commands in the following table.

Voice Commands
tune [to] SAT
[tune [to]] SAT 1
[tune [to]] SAT 2
[tune [to]] SAT 3
[tune [to]] preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 1 preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 2 preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 3 preset ___
tune [to] [Sirius]
Help
[tune [to]] Sirius [channel] ___ — You can say the channel number (0-233) to listen to that Sirius station.

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
(disc | CD [player]) play
You can then say any of the following commands.
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play | change to] track [number] ___
repeat (track | song) [on]
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle | random | mix) [on | (tracks | songs) [on]]

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command
(shuffle | random | mix) (CD [player] | disc) [on]
(shuffle | random | mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.
	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		Turn off the Auto phone-book download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The device is not connected.	Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	
	The song may have copy-right protection, which does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A". Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section. Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit' or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC. On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some order versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

SYNC System Reset
The SYNC system in your vehicle has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (Such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. Release both buttons after 2-3 seconds. Please allow a few minutes for the reset to complete. After a few minutes has passed you can resume using the SYNC system.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

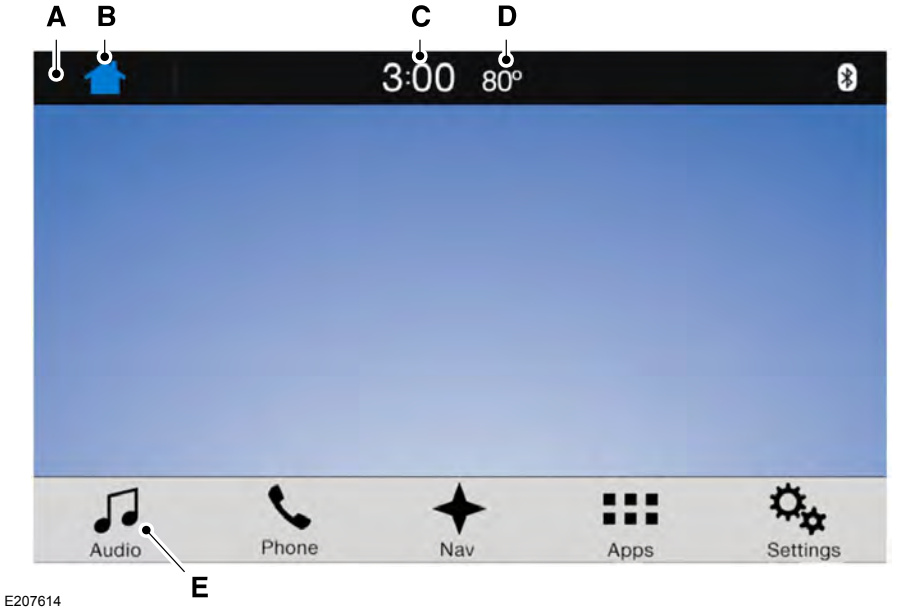
Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 397).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

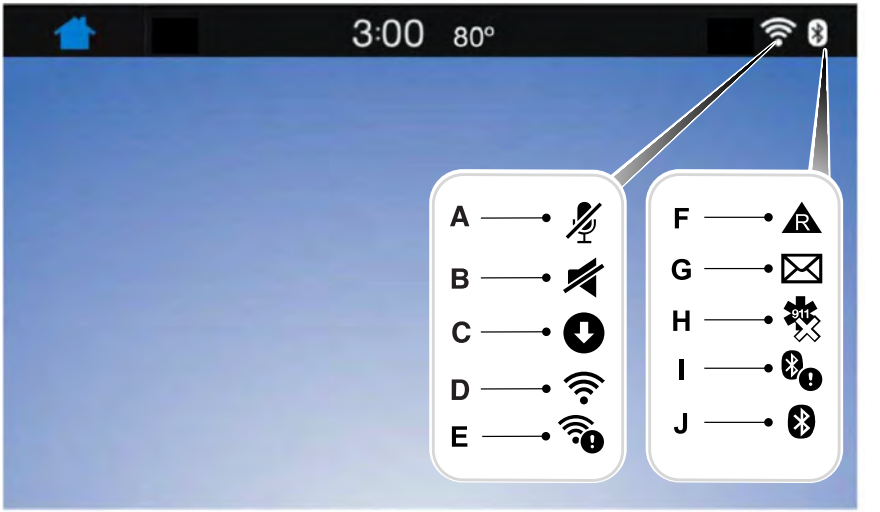
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E223058

Callout	Item	Description
A	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
B	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.
C	Download	This icon displays when SYNC 3 has received a software update. Pressing the icon will show more details about the new software.
D	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
E	Wi-Fi in Range	This icon displays when an available Wi-Fi network is within range.
F	Roaming	This icon displays when your cell phone is roaming.
G	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.

Callout	Item	Description
H	911 Assist Off	This icon displays when 911 Assist is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
I	Bluetooth Alert	This icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.
J	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iphone or android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 364).

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models,* ***SEEK NEXT*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE REJECT*** *and* ***SEEK PREVIOUS*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE ACCEPT.***

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 67).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** se as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA**: Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Audio System** (page 298).
- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system.

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch 911 Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 397).

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h). Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Demo navigation route.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

When the installation is complete, take the USB drive back to the computer to report the update. Log into your owner account and return to the SYNC software update page and confirm that you have installed the update. Insert the USB drive used for the update into your computer and choose to report your update. The website updates your records to reflect your current software version.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 397). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 409).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST.

United States: 1-800-392-3673.

Canada: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 397). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

HOME SCREEN



E207616

Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Tile	Home screen display
		If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, 911 assist setting state (On or Off), text messaging and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Command	Action and Description
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of a artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ *	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16". You can also just say the name of a Sirius station such as "The Pulse".
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
FM ___ HD ___ *	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as “88.7 FM HD 1”.
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command	Description
Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

* This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 397).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command	Description
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find New Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

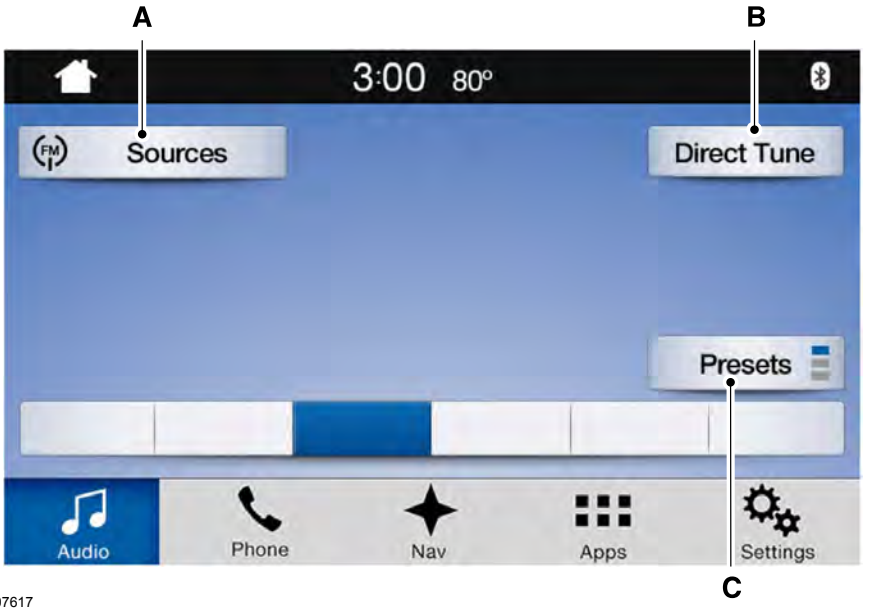
Voice command	Description
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

ENTERTAINMENT



E207617

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS	*
CD	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu item	
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

* This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

The following buttons are available for Sirius:

Menu item	Action and description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu item	Action and description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See **Settings** (page 397).	

Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

There are three preset banks available for SIRIUS. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 397).

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Troubleshooting tips		
Message	**Cause**	**Action**
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets.*

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 397).

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

Website
www.hdradio.com

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

Note: *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. *
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. *

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

* You can find the form here:

Website
http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

CD

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

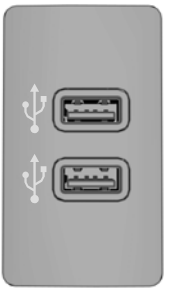
While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artists
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Button	Function
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as Pandora or iHeartRadio through a USB or bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 394).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PHONE

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

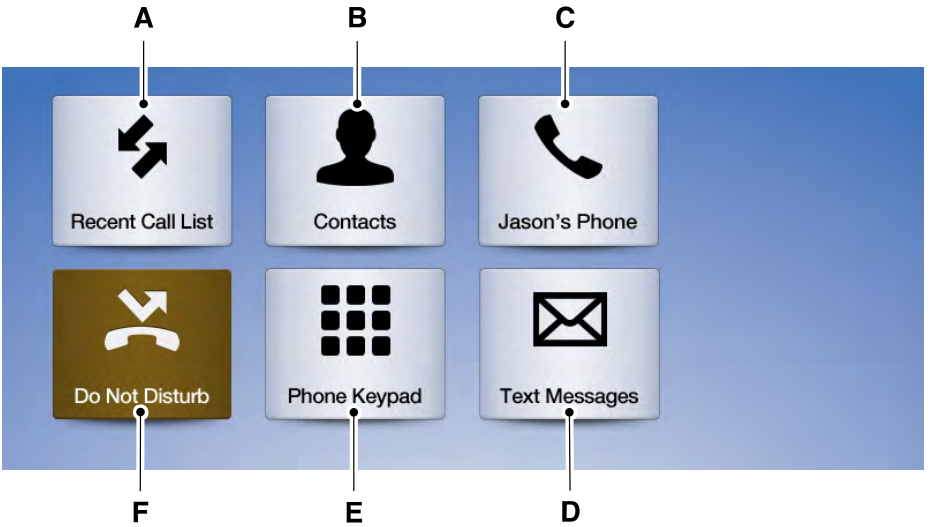
To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Websites
owner.ford.com

Websites
www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E205447

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
		You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts. See **Settings** (page 397).			
D	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.			
E	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.			
		Call		Press this button to begin a call.	
F	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to send all calls directly to your voicemail. New text message notifications are not displayed on the screen and all ringtones and alerts are set to silent.			

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 364). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.
- 911 Assist (United States and Canada Only). See **Settings** (page 397).

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 313).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. Select Apple CarPlay on the touchscreen.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: *The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.*

2. To switch this feature on from the Settings screen, scroll left on the screen and select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Enable Android Auto

Note: *Android Auto must be switched on prior to plugging your device.*

You can then plug your device into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 313).

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.*

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mi (5 km).



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.



Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

If you have subscribed to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (where available), traffic flow will be indicated on the map by green (clear), yellow (slowing), and red (stopped) road highlights. Traffic flow is indicated where the information is available and varies across the US.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 397).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"
	Partial Address (number, street) if searching in current state (number, street and zip code (or postal code in Canada)) if searching out of state You can enter unique addresses that contain door number prefixes with or without the prefix. For example, you could enter "6N340 Fairway Lane" or "340 Fairway Lane".
	City (name or zip code)
	Point of Interest (name or category)
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######) One to six decimal places are accepted.
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	These locations cannot be deleted individually. To delete them, preform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 409).	
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
	The address saves as a favorite and you see the favorites screen. You can now select this address from the favorites screen.	
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	hotel	
	ATM	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	See All	Press to view additional categories. Once you have selected a category, follow the menus to find what you are looking for.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Economical Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation. The system asks for confirmation then returns you to the map mode screen.	

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	Highway exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays (if any are present). When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Button		
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 397).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
Mute Guidance	Selecting this option switches off the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute guidance.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

cityseeker (If Equipped)

Note: *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1110 cities (1049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*



E225487

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores. See **Apps** (page 394).

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico. You can also visit:

Website
www.navigation.com/sync

You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com/mapcreator. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Map coverage includes the USA (including Puerto Rico and the US Virgin Islands), Canada and Mexico.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:*

Websites
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Note: *AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through Applink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Connect Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 397).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.*

Note: *In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.*

Note: *A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.*

Note: *Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.*

Note: *Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.*

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Gracenote® Management	Switches on and off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.		

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Device Information	Allows you to see phone and device information.
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Manage Contacts	
You can then select:	
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

911 Assist

Note: *This service is only available in the United States and Canada.*

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phone-book as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the 911 Assist call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, If Available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.		
Avoid Freeways	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids freeways when computing a navigation route.		
Avoid Toll Roads	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids Toll Roads when computing a navigation route.		
Avoid Ferries/Car Trains	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids the use of Ferries or Trains when computing a navigation route.		

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	A tone sounds followed by voice instructions.
Voice Only	Only voice instructions are given.
Tones Only	Only a tone sounds to prompt you.

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.		
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.		
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:			
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.		
	There are three possible statuses:		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:
			Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.		
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.		

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Menu Item	
About	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *You vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Door Keypad Code

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

United States: 1-800-392-3673
Canada: 1-800-565-3673

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with the your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 371).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See **Settings** (page 397).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Connect Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Connect Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>|) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Customer Relationship Center	United States: 1-800-392-3673
	Canada: 1-800-565-3673
Website	owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

Web Address (United States)
www.Accessories.Ford.com

Web Address (Canada)
www.Accessories.Ford.ca

Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior Style

- Hood protector.*
- Side window deflectors.
- Splash guards.
- Wheels.
- Step bars.
- Window grilles.

Interior Style

- All-weather floor mats.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup and smokers packages.
- Cargo area illumination.
- Cargo liners.
- Cargo organizers.
- Hitch and towing accessories.
- Roof racks.*
- Seat covers.
- Tablet cradle.

Peace of Mind

- Back-up alarm.
- Hitch scan rear park assist sensor.*
- Roadside assistance kits.*
- Keyless entry keypad.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security system.
- Wheel locks.

*The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The auxiliary switchboard on the center console makes aftermarket customization easier, with four prewired switches attached to the power distribution box for electrical accessories.



E163431

When using the auxiliary switches for an extended period of time, we recommend that the engine is running to prevent the battery from running out of charge.

A fuse and relay kit is included with this option. The kit contains the required fuses and relays that are included under the driver seat in the pre-fusebox. Refer to the instructions included with the kit. See an authorized dealer for service.

There is one power lead connector for each switch. These can be found at either the 43-way connector for the AUX 1 and AUX 2 switches or the 6-way connector for the AUX 3 and AUX 4 switches. Both connectors are behind the passenger side cup holder.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

The relays are coded as follows:

	Circuit Number	Wire Color	Fuse Rating
AUX 1[1]	CAC05	Yellow	20A
AUX 2[1]	CAC06	Green with brown trace	20A
AUX 3[1]	CAC13	Blue with orange trace	40A
AUX 4[2]	CAC14	Yellow with orange trace	40A

[1] Operates when you switch the igntion on.

[2] Operates only when the engine is running.

If different switch functionality is required please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service. See **Special Notices** (page 11).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD PROTECT EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)

Ford Protect means peace of mind. It's the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, Insist on genuine Ford Protect extended service plans!

Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect Extended Service Plan. With Ford Protect you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it's probably easier to list what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we'll give you a loaner to use for the day.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Which should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

Ford Protect also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Extended Service Plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect Extended Service Plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232

Ford Protect (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the correct times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep the cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 12-month or 12,000 mi (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to crash repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the correct performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Vehicles with a 3.2L, 3.5L or 3.7L Engine

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the correct oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter** (page 217).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

All Vehicles

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to correctly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and correct pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for correct operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for correct operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running correctly, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running correctly.

Multi-point inspection
Accessory drive belt(s).
Battery performance.
Engine air filter.
Exhaust system.
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation.
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary.
For oil and fluid leaks.
Horn operation.
Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses.
Suspension component for leaks or damage.
Steering and linkage.
Tires (including spare) for wear and correct pressure**.
Windshield for cracks, chips or pits.
Washer spray and wiper operation.

* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission, power steering (if equipped with hydraulic power assist steering) and window washer.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the oil change message	
Interval	**Vehicle use and example**
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving. No, or moderate, load or towing. Flat to moderately hilly roads. No extended idling.
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing. Mountainous or off-road conditions. Extended idling. Extended hot or cold operation.
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing. Extreme hot or cold operation.

Normal Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*
Change engine oil and filter.**
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick). Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect front axle and U-joints. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings.
Diesel engine fill diesel exhaust fluid.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

* Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

** Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes.

Other maintenance items [1]	
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Torque rear axle U-bolts to specification.
	Diesel engine replace fuel filter. [2]
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 45000 miles (70000 km)	Change diesel foam air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. [3]
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). [4]
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Other maintenance items [1]	
	Change rear axle fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s).

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Replace early if indicated by per Water In Fuel warning lamp. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

[3] Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

[4] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the oil change required message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1**: The message appears at 28,750 mi (46,270 km). Perform the 30,000 mi (48,000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2**: The message does not appear, but the odometer reads 30,000 mi (48,000 km) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25,000 mi (40,000 km)). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints.
	See axle maintenance items under **Exceptions**.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace engine air filter.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each engine oil and filter change.

Off-road operation	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints and U-joints. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each engine oil and filter change.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Exclusive use of E85 (Flex fuel vehicles only)	
Every oil change interval	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

Normal vehicle axle maintenance: Rear axles and power take-off units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70ºF (21ºC) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), change non-synthetic rear axle fluid every 30,000 mi (48,000 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W85 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C942-A or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 EST-M2C118-A or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

Police, Taxi and Livery vehicle axle maintenance: Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 mi (160,000 km). Rear axle fluid change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W85 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C942-A or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 milliliters) of additive friction modifier XL-3 EST-M2C118-A, or equivalent, for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. Change the axle fluid anytime the axle submerges in water.

California fuel filter replacement: If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

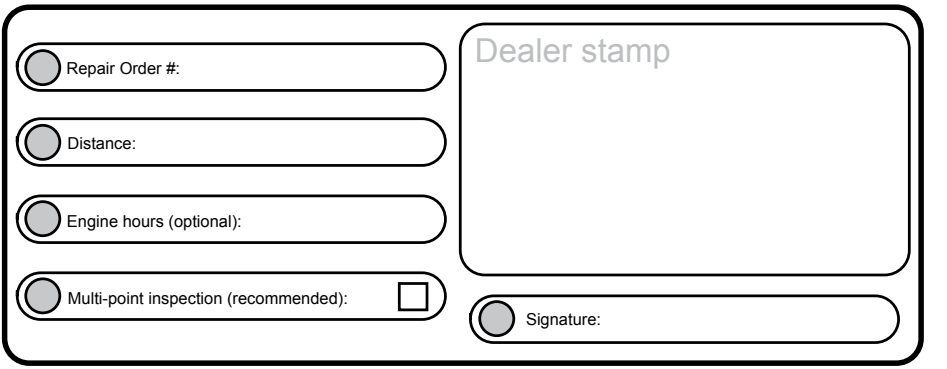
Hot climate oil change intervals: Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5,000 mi (8,000 km).

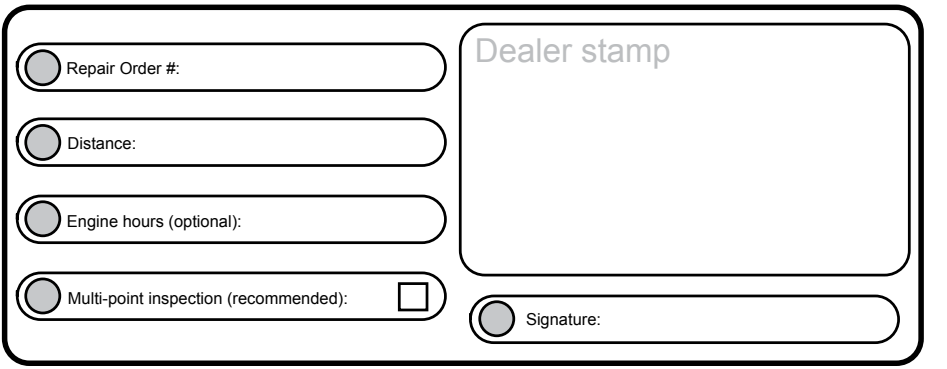
If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 3,000 mi (4,800 km).

Engine air filter replacement: The life of the engine air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD





Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

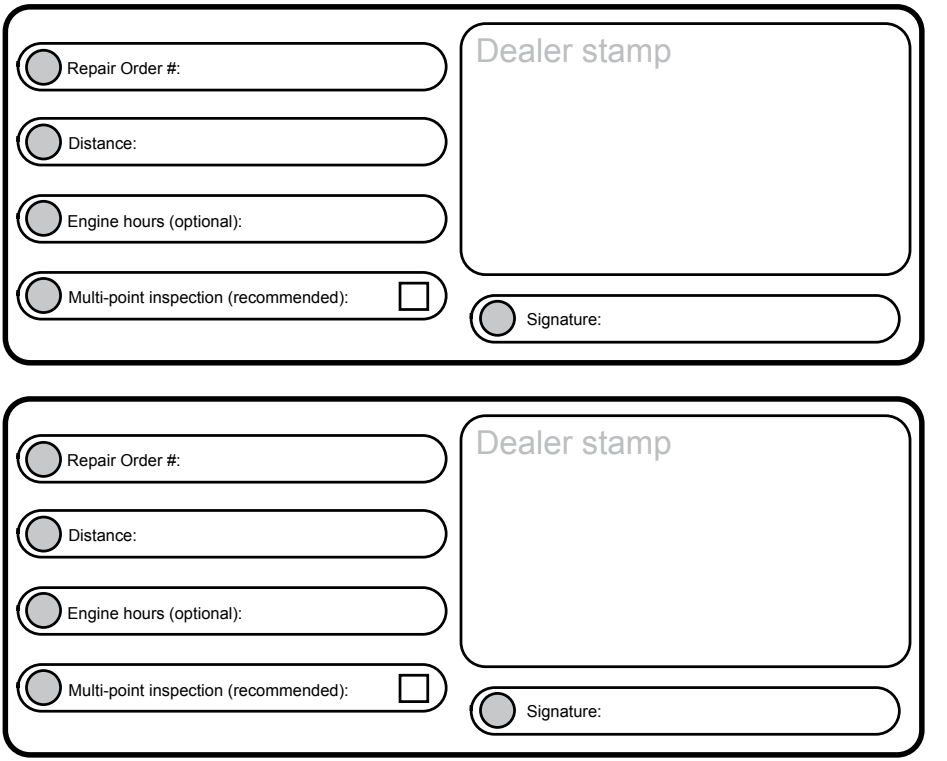
Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

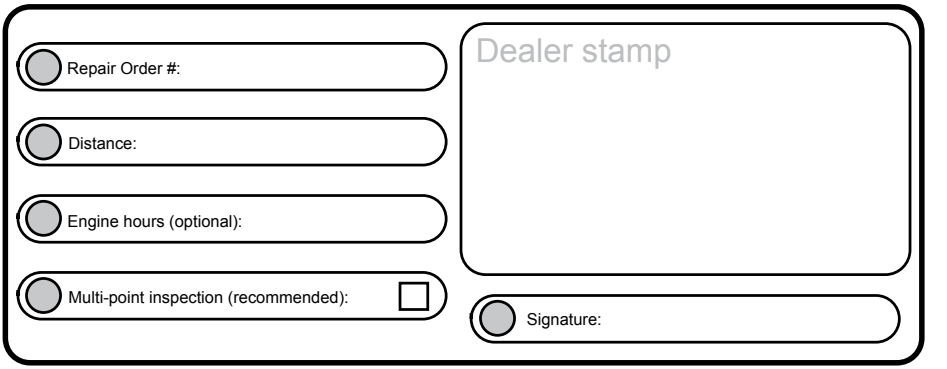
Engine hours (optional):

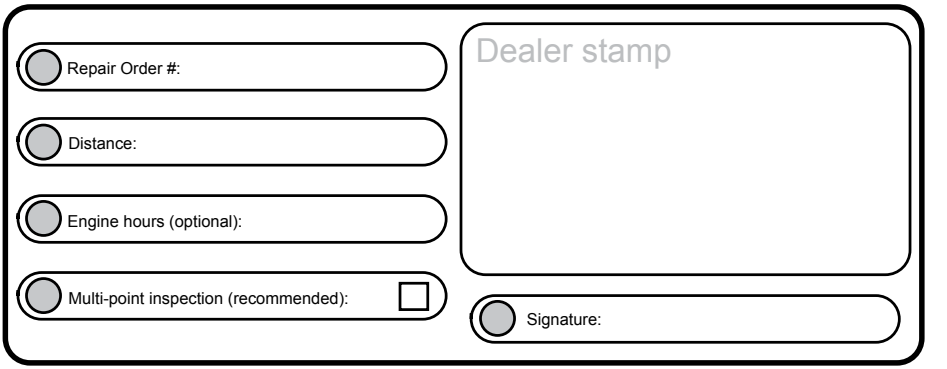
Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing





Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

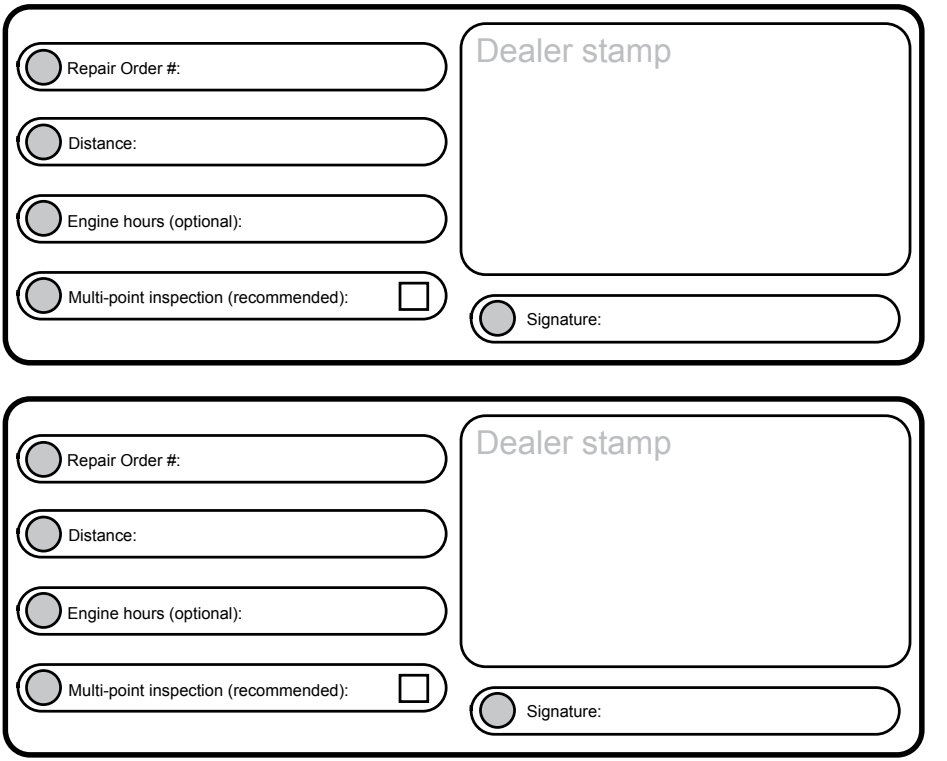
Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

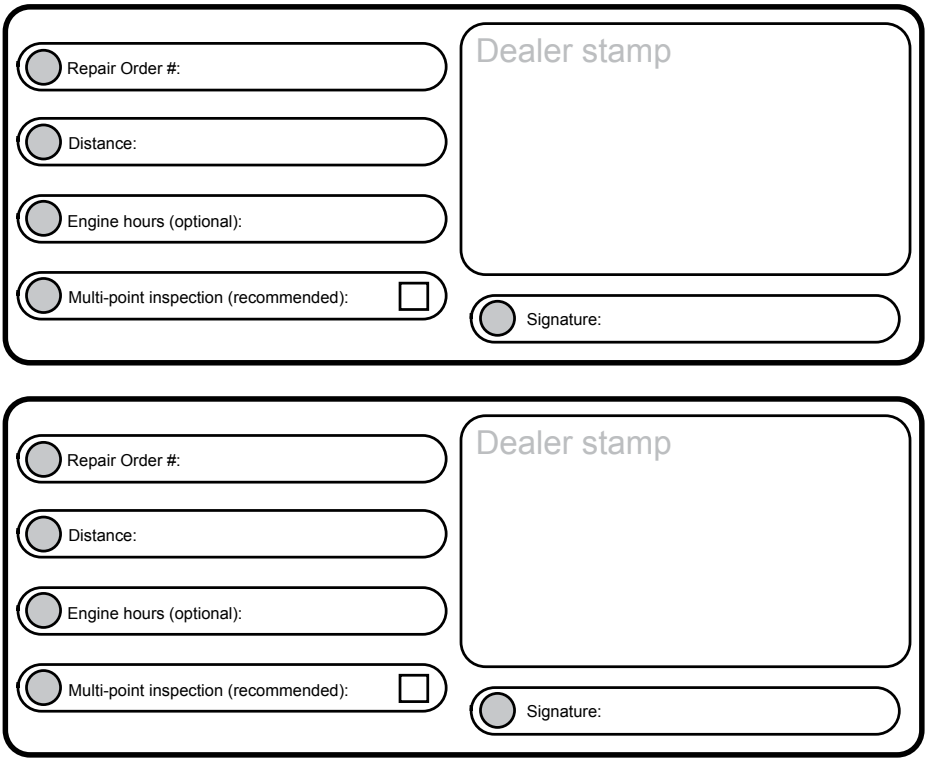
Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....95
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....146
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....146
Accessories....422
Exterior Style....422
Interior Style....422
Lifestyle....422
Peace of Mind....422
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
Adjusting the Headlamps....229
Horizontal Aim Adjustment....230
Vertical Aim Adjustment....229
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....67
Airbag Disposal....47
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....95
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter....237
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....63
Anti-Theft Alarm....63
Alarm System....63
Arming the Alarm....63
Disarming the Alarm....63
Triggering the Alarm....63
Appendices....445
Apps....394
....394
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....396
Audible Warnings and Indicators....84
Airbag Secondary Warning....84
Door Ajar....84
Exterior Lamps On....84
Gearshift Lever not in Park (P)....84
Key in Ignition....84
Parking Brake On....84
Safety Belt Minder....84
Audio Control....67
Audio Input Jack....313
Audio System....298
General Information....298
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Satellite Radio....306
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC....304
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM....299
AUX Button....302
Clock Button....301
Menu Button....302
Sound Button....302
Station Preset Buttons....302
Station Tuning Buttons....301
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....302
Autolamps....73
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....73
Automatic Transmission....141
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....144
Brake-Shift Interlock....143
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow....145
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....142
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....141
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....222
Autowipers....70
Autowipers Settings....71
Auxiliary Power Points....108
12 Volt DC Power Point....108
AC Power Point....108
Locations....108
Auxiliary Switches....423

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....226
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....211
Booster Seats....25
Types of Booster Seats....25
Bottle Holder....111

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Brake Fluid Check....223
Brakes....146
General Information....146
Breaking-In....180
Bulb Specification Chart....236

C

California Proposition 65....10
Capacities and Specifications - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel....294
Capacities....294
Specifications....295
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™....288
Capacities....288
Specifications....289
Capacities and Specifications - 3.7L....291
Capacities....291
Specifications....292
Capacities and Specifications....281
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....240
Catalytic Converter....123
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....123
Changing a Bulb....231
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp....234
Front Clearance Lamp....233
Headlamp....231
Interior Lamp....234
License Plate Lamp....234
Reading Lamps....235
Rear Lamps....233
Side Direction Indicator....233
Sun Visor Mirror Lamp....235
Changing a Fuse....209
Fuses....209
Changing a Road Wheel....270
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....271
Front Jacking Points....276
Installing a Road Wheel....278
Locking Lug Nuts....272
Rear Jacking Points....277
Removing a Road Wheel....277
Stowing the Wheel and Vehicle Jack....279
Vehicle Jack....275
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel....272
Changing the 12V Battery....226
Installing the Battery....228
Removing the Battery....226
Changing the Engine Air Filter....237
Secondary Foam Air Filter....238
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter....217
Engine Lubrication for Severe Service Operation....217
Changing the Wiper Blades....228
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades....228
Checking MyKey System Status....54
Checking the Wiper Blades....228
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....35
Child Restraint Positioning....27
Child Safety....15
General Information....15
Child Safety Locks....28
Left-Hand Side....28
Right-Hand Side....29
Cigar Lighter....109
Cleaning Products....239
Cleaning the Engine....241
Cleaning the Exterior....240
Body Paintwork Preservation....240
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....240
Cleaning the Headlamps....240
Cleaning the Rear Window....240
Sliding Door Tracks....240
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....243
Cleaning the Interior....242
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats....242
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....243
Leather Interior....242
Rear Windows....243
Seatbelts....242
Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays....243
Suede Micro Fiber Fabric....242
Cleaning the Wheels....244
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....241

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Clearing All MyKeys....53
Climate Control....95
Cold Weather Precautions....181
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....218
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....46
Creating a MyKey....52
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....52
Cruise Control....68
Principle of Operation....157
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....157
Cup Holders....111
Customer Assistance....189

D

Data Recording....9
Daytime Running Lamps....74
Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Regeneration....115
Digital Radio....308
HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting....309
Direction Indicators....74
Doors and Locks....57
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter....115
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel....224
Changing the Fuel Filter....224
Purging Air From the Fuel System....225
Driver Alert....159
Principle of Operation....159
Using Driver Alert....159
Driver and Passenger Airbags....38
Children and Airbags....43
Passenger Airbag On and Off Switch....38
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment....43
Driving Aids....159
Driving Hints....180
Driving Through Water....181
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....74

E

Economical Driving....180
Emission Control System....130
Diesel Exhaust System: Oxidation Catalyst And Diesel Particulate Filter System....132
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance....140
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)....131
Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing....131
Tampering With a Noise Control System....139
End User License Agreement....445
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)....445
Engine Block Heater....116
Using the Engine Block Heater....116
Engine Coolant Check....218
Adding Coolant....219
Coolant Change....220
Engine Coolant Temperature Management....222
Fail-Safe Cooling....221
Recycled Coolant....220
Severe Climates....220
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel....218
Engine Cooling Fan - E85/ Gasoline....218
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....62
Engine Oil Check....216
Adding Engine Oil....217
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel....216
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.5L Ecoboost™....216
Engine Oil Dipstick - 3.7L....216
Engine Specifications - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel....282
Drivebelt Routing....282
Engine Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™....281
Drivebelt Routing....281
Engine Specifications - 3.7L....281
Drivebelt Routing....282

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Entertainment....371
AM/FM Radio....372
Apps....380
Bluetooth Stereo or USB....379
CD....378
HD Radio™ Information (If Available)....375
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)....372
Sources....371
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....380
USB Ports....380
Environment....14
Essential Towing Checks....172
Before Towing a Trailer....177
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Water Craft (PWC)....178
Safety Chains....173
Tow Hitch....173
Trailer Brakes....173
Trailer Lamps....177
Trailer Towing Connector....172
When Towing a Trailer....177
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....9
Export Unique Options....13
Exterior Mirrors....77
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....77
Power Exterior Mirrors....77

F

Fan
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel....218
See: Engine Cooling Fan - E85/Gasoline....218
Fastening the Seatbelts....31
Seatbelt Locking Modes....32
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....31
Floor Mats....181
Ford Credit....10
US Only....10
Ford Protect....425
Ford Protect (CANADA ONLY)....426
Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)....425
Fuel and Refueling....117
Fuel Consumption....129
Calculating Fuel Economy....129
Filling the Fuel Tank....129
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....122
Fuel Filter - Gasoline....226
Fuel Quality - Diesel....120
Biodiesel....121
Diesel Fuel Additives....122
Fuel Requirements - Choosing The Right Fuel: Vehicles Operated Where Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel Is Not Required....120
Fuel Requirements - Choosing the Right Fuel: Vehicles Operated Where Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is Required (United States/Canada/Puerto Rico/U.S. Virgin Islands and Other Locales)....120
Fuel Quality - E85....118
Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles....118
Switching Between E85 and Gasoline....119
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....118
Choosing the Right Fuel....118
Fuel Shutoff....184
Fuse Box Locations....196
Body Control Module Fuse Box....196
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....196
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....196
Pre-fuse Box....196
Fuses....196
Fuse Specification Chart....197
Body Control Module....207
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....197
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel....201
Pre-fuse Box....205

G

Gauges....79
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....79
Fuel Gauge....80
Information Display....79
Tripmeter Reset and Distance to Empty....80
General Information on Radio Frequencies....48
General Maintenance Information....427
Multi-point Inspection....429

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Owner Checks and Services....428
Protecting Your Investment....427
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?....427
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?....427
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....192
Getting the Services You Need....189
Away From Home....189

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....147
Hazard Warning Flashers....184
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....229
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp....230
Head Restraints....99
Adjusting the Head Restraint....100
Installing the Head Restraint....100
Removing the Head Restraint....100
Heated Seats....106
Heated Windows and Mirrors....98
Heated Exterior Mirrors....98
Heated Rear Window....98
Heating
See: Climate Control....95
Hill Start Assist - Vehicles With: Hill Start Assist....147
Switching the System On and Off....148
Using Hill Start Assist....148
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....96
Cooling the Interior Quickly....96
General Hints....96
Heating the Interior Quickly....96
Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions....97
Recommended Settings for Cooling....96
Recommended Settings for Heating....96
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....97
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures....96
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....146
Home Screen....363
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....211

I

Ignition Switch....112
In California (U.S. Only)....190
Information Display Control....69
Information Displays....85
General Information....85
Information Messages....89
Installing Child Restraints....16
Child Safety Seat....16
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts....17
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)....19
Using Tether Straps....21
Instrument Cluster....79
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....74
Interior Lamps....75
Courtesy Lamp....75
Reading Lamps....75
Interior Mirror....77
Auto-Dimming Mirror....78
Introduction....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....184
Connecting the Jumper Cables....185
Jump Starting....186
Preparing Your Vehicle....185
Removing the Jumper Cables....186

K

Keys and Remote Controls....48
Principle of Operation....48

L

Lane Keeping System....160
Lane Keeping Alert....160
Lighting Control....72
Headlamp Flasher....73

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Headlamp High Beam....73
Lighting Control Positions....72
Parking Lamps....72
Lighting....72
General Information....72
Load Carrying....164
Load Limit....164
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles....168
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer....164
Load Retaining Fixtures....164
Securing Cargo....164
Locking and Unlocking....57
Automatic Locking....61
Automatic Unlocking....61
Configurable Unlocking....61
Locking....57
Locking and Unlocking Confirmation....57
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside....57
One-Stage Unlocking....61
Opening and Closing the Double Rear Doors....59
Opening and Closing the Sliding Door....58
Rear Emergency Exit....60
Two-Stage Unlocking....61
Unlocking....57
Zone Re-Locking....61
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....270

M

Maintenance....211
General Information....211
Manual Climate Control....95
Manual Seats....100
Adjusting the Armrest....102
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....101
Moving the Seat Backward or Forward....100
Recline Adjustment....101
Media Hub....314
Message Center
See: Information Displays....85
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....98
See: Windows and Mirrors....76
Mobile Communications Equipment....12
Motorcraft Parts - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel....285
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Ecoboost™....283
Motorcraft Parts - 3.7L....284
MyKey Troubleshooting....55
MyKey™....51
Principle of Operation....51

N

Navigation....386
cityseeker....393
Destination Mode....388
Map Mode....386
Navigation Map Updates....394
Navigation Menu....391
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....394
Waypoints....392
Normal Scheduled Maintenance....430
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™....430
Normal Maintenance Intervals....430

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset....218
Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System....218
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....216
Opening and Closing the Hood....211
Closing the Hood....212
Opening the Hood....211
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....193
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual....194
Overhead Console....111
Overhead Storage Compartments....111

P

Parking Aid....152
Switching the Parking Aid System Off....153

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Parking Aids....152
Principle of Operation....152
Parking Brake....147
Center Parking Brake....147
Passive Anti-Theft System....62
SecuriLock®....62
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....62
Perchlorate....10
Personalized Settings....88
Measure Units....88
Phone....381
During a Phone Call....384
Making Calls....383
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....381
Phone Menu....382
Receiving Calls....384
Smartphone Connectivity....385
Text Messaging....385
Post-Crash Alert System....187
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....57
Power Running Boards....64
Power Seats....102
Power Lumbar....104
Power Steering Fluid Check....223
Adding Power Steering Fluid....223
Power Windows....76
Accessory Delay....76
Bounce-Back....76
Driver Side One-Touch Down....76
Driver Side One-Touch Up....76
Protecting the Environment....14

R

Rear Passenger Climate Controls....97
Rear Quarter Windows....78
Closing the Rear Quarter Windows....78
Opening the Rear Quarter Windows....78
Rear Seats....104
Installing the Seats....105
Recline Adjustment....104
Removing Seats (Passenger Vehicles)....104
Rear View Camera....154
Manual Zoom....156
Rear Camera Delay....156
Using the Rear View Camera System....154
Vehicles with Parking Aid....156
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....154
Recommended Towing Weights....170
Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle....172
Reduced Engine Performance....180
Refueling....127
System Warnings....128
Remote Control....48
Car Finder....49
Integrated Key head Transmitter....48
Programming a New Remote Control....49
Replacing the Battery....49
Sounding a Panic Alarm....50
Removing a Headlamp....230
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....244
Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
Collision Repairs....11
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....11
Warranty on Replacement Parts....11
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....50
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....194
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....194
Roadside Assistance....183
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance....183
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage....184
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance....184
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance....183
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance....183
Roadside Emergencies....183
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....180
Running Out of Fuel....122
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....122

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Filling a Portable Fuel Container....122

S

Safety Canopy™....44
Safety Precautions....117
Satellite Radio....310
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)....311
Satellite Radio Reception Factors....311
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service....311
Troubleshooting....312
Scheduled Maintenance Record....435
Scheduled Maintenance....427
Seatbelt Extension....36
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....33
Seatbelt Reminder....34
Belt-Minder®....34
Seatbelts....30
Principle of Operation....30
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....33
Conditions of operation....34
Seats....99
Security....62
Selective Catalytic Reduction System....123
Approximate Diesel Exhaust Fluid Usage....126
Contaminated Diesel Exhaust Fluid or Inoperative Selective Catalytic Reduction System....126
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Guidelines....126
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Level....124
Settings....397
911 Assist....402
Ambient Lighting....407
Bluetooth....399
Clock....398
Display....408
General....406
Media Player....398
Mobile Apps....405
Navigation....403
Phone....399
Radio....402
Sound....397
Valet Mode....409
Vehicle....407
Voice Control....409
Wi-Fi....407
Side Airbags....44
Sitting in the Correct Position....99
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....265
Special Notices....11
New Vehicle Limited Warranty....11
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance....432
Exceptions....434
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....157
Speed Limiter....159
Engine Speed Limiter....159
Vehicle Speed Limiter - Fixed....159
Stability Control....150
Principle of Operation....150
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....112
Starting a Diesel Engine....113
Cold Weather Operation....114
Engine Glow Plugs....114
Failure to Start....114
Starting a Cold or Hot Engine....114
Starting a Gasoline Engine....113
Cold or Hot Engine....113
Engine Idle Speed after Starting....113
Flooded Engine....113
Starting and Stopping the Engine....112
General Information....112
Steering....162
Steering Wheel....67
Storage Compartments....111
Supplementary Restraints System....37
Principle of Operation....37
Switching Off the Engine....115
Vehicles With a Turbocharger....115
Symbols Glossary....7
SYNC™ 3....353
General Information....353
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....409
SYNC™ Applications and Services....331
911 Assist....331
SYNC Mobile Apps....333
SYNC™....315
General Information....315

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....345

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....281
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....191
Tire Care.....248
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....250
Inflating the Tires.....257
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grades.....248
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall.....251
Inspecting the Tires and Wheel Valve Stems.....260
Location of the Tire Label.....257
Tire Age.....261
Tire and Wheel Alignment.....263
Tire Damage.....260
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....262
Tire Replacement Requirements.....261
Tire Rotation.....264
Tire Safety Practices.....263
Tire Wear.....260
United States Department of Transportation Tire Quality Grades.....249
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....266
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....267
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....269
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....267
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....247
Towing a Trailer.....169
Load Placement.....169
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....178
Emergency Towing.....178
Recreational Towing.....179
Towing.....169
Traction Control.....149
Principle of Operation.....149
Trailer Sway Control.....170
Transmission Code Designation.....287
Transmission.....141
Transmission
See: Transmission.....141
Transporting the Vehicle.....187
Trip Computer.....88
All Values.....88
Average Fuel Consumption.....88
Digital Speedometer.....88
Distance to Empty.....88
Outside Air Temperature.....88
Resetting the Trip Computer.....88
Trip Odometer.....88
Trip Timer.....88

U

Under Hood Overview - 3.2L Power Stroke Diesel.....215
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....213
Under Hood Overview - 3.7L.....214
USB Port.....313
Using Cruise Control.....157
Switching Cruise Control Off.....158
Switching Cruise Control On.....157
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....55
Using Power Running Boards.....64
Automatic Power Deploy.....64
Automatic Power Stow.....64
Bounce-back.....65
Enabling and Disabling.....65
Manual Operation.....66
Manual Power Deploy.....64
Resetting the System.....66
Using Snow Chains.....265
Using Stability Control.....151
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....336
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....340
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings.....342
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port.....336
Media Menu Features.....339
Media Voice Commands.....337
USB 2.....342

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Voice Commands for Audio Sources.....343
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....319
Accessing Features through the Phone Menu.....324
Accessing Your Phone Settings.....327
Bluetooth Devices.....328
Making Calls.....323
Pairing a Phone for the First Time.....320
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....321
Phone Options during an Active Call.....323
Phone Voice Commands.....321
Receiving Calls.....323
System Settings.....329
Text Messaging.....325
Using Traction Control.....149
Switching the System Off.....149
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....149
Using a Switch.....149
Using the Information Display Controls.....149
Using Voice Recognition.....317
Audio Voice Commands.....365
Initiating a Voice Session.....317
Mobile App Voice Commands.....368
Navigation Voice Commands.....367
Phone Voice Commands.....366
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands.....369
System Interaction and Feedback.....318
Voice Settings Commands.....369
Using Winter Tires.....265
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....192

V

Vehicle Care.....239
Vehicle Certification Label.....287
Vehicle Identification Number.....286
Vehicle Storage.....244
Battery.....245
Body.....245
Brakes.....246
Cooling system.....245
Engine.....245
Fuel system.....245
General.....245
Miscellaneous.....246
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....246
Tires.....246
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....95
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....286
Voice Control.....68

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....81
Airbag Warning Lamp.....81
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....81
Brake System Warning Lamp.....81
Diesel Warning Lamps.....81
Direction Indicator.....82
Door Ajar.....82
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....82
Engine Warning Lamps.....82
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....82
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....82
Ignition Warning Lamp.....82
Lamps on Indicator.....82
Lane Departure Warning Indicator.....82
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....83
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....83
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp.....83
Message Center Indicator.....83
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....83
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....83
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....83
Transmission Tow/Haul Warning Lamp.....83
Washer Fluid Check.....223
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....240
See: Wipers and Washers.....70
Waxing.....240
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....270
Wheels and Tires.....247
General Information.....247

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing

Technical Specifications....279
Windows and Mirrors....76
Windshield Washers....71
Windshield Wipers....70
Intermittent Wipe....70
Winter Tires
See: Using Winter Tires....265
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....228
Wipers and Washers....70

Transit (TTH) Canada/United States of America, HK3J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 04/2016, First Printing